

*1592 34. 37. 87.*

# The Iudyt all of byrns:

Consyderunge that it is expedient for every man to know the  
condition and qualites of his body/and to know in what state and condicyon his  
standerth in/whiche can not be knowen so well as by the byrne In consy-  
deration wherof this woꝛke is collected and gathered out of  $\phi$  severall sayngis  
of al Auctours of  $\phi$ physike/to the entent that every man myght byelly come to the  
knowlege of  $\phi$ smalles/whiche sayd woꝛke is divided into. iiii. severall booke/s/where  
of the fyrst boke declareth pynceppaly howe byrne is gendered in mans body/ & of  
his qualites with all  $\phi$ hole workyng of nature in manes body. The second boke  
treateth of colours in byrne/ & what they signifye. The thyrde boke treateth of co-  
ours in byrne what they signifye/ & suche schenelles as they signifye is there de-  
clared/ & also ther causes & qualites of many thynges moos/ touchyng the seyns of  
 $\phi$ physike/as byelly doth apere in a cabull/ in the latter ende of this boke.





MUSEVM  
BRITAN  
NICVM



¶ Quid sit bryne &amp; unde &amp; qualiter sit.

Ca. i.



¶ The saith in his text & nigh all auctours & comentours  
 this faculte/ this is p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly of bryne. Descripcio is  
 a thyng that telleth what a thyng is. ¶ Bryne is alate &  
 a subtile melting & cleansing of bloode & of humours. And  
 take heed that I saye late/ for this saye/ for sumtyme the  
 water passeth out of the body/ soone after that it is drom-  
 ben/ and that oweth not to be called bryne properly/ but it  
 oweth to be called p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly/ for whē it is p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly soone/ neyther  
 it is decocted/ ne digested in the brynes & in the cyrnes ne the colours of hym is  
 not profounded (that is to saye) not deped ne dyed as it shoulde be/ & al is because  
 p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly hath not his tyme in p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly body/ as he shoulde have. Also I saye subtile  
 for the moze that he is decocted and digested in p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly body the moze subtile is he in  
 hym selfe/ and the better profounded in colours/ as thou shalt se in the seconde  
 booke. ¶ Subtile is as moche for to saye as clere and thyne and bryght. also I saye  
 a meltinge and a cleansing of the bloode and the humours/ for this capson  
 ¶ For tyme as thou seyst that the whey is wroonge and clenched and pressed out  
 fro p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly the thozogh wryng & traueillinge and chynnyng out fro the thycke  
 mater (that is to saye) fro the cloddres & clumpres & cruddes/ tyme so is p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly  
 pressed and wroonge and clenched out from *massa sanguis* (that is to saye) fro p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly  
 of p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly clodde of the bloode. ¶ Understande that *Massa sanguis* is no thyng els but col-  
 lection (that is to saye) gadryng to gyther of the .iii. humours/ and that is Epac  
 the lyuer. ¶ For Epac is no thyng but *Sanguis coagulatus*. Anglyce a colleccion of  
 clodded bloode and clapped and crudded togyder and thozogh myght and vertu  
 of the lyuer are this humours caused & wrought helping kynde hete/ as thou  
 mayst se in the nexte Chaptyr folowynge. And to this descripcio of bryne that  
 Gylis sheweth accordeth well to p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly desynicion ¶ Theophilus and plake sheweth  
 desynicion and descripcio is all one to saye. ¶ Bryne is a cleansing of the blo-  
 de and of all the other humours wrought by wey of kynde in mannes body.  
 ¶ Whiche and how many & what ben humours of man se in p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly. chaptyr. For  
 I spake of mythe in the fyrst desynicion of bryne understande/ that in mythe  
 is .iiii. thynges (that is to saye) wete whey/ and that is *frigidum* & *humidum*. colde and  
 mythe. *Butirum*. that is butter & that is *calidum* & *humidum*. hote & mythe. *Casus*  
 chele that is *frigidus* & *secus*. colde & drye. The .iiii. is wete & of wete substance  
 that is to saye *Lac* mythe *frigidum* & *humidum*. colde & mythe ¶ Item another exem-  
 ple causynge & gendryng of bryne in man/ for auctours call bryne a *Cribacosi*  
 that is to saye a sytynge/ a cleansing thozogh a syte/ For tyme as p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly thozogh  
 the Cribos the syte is separat and dryed and chynnyed and parted (that is to  
 saye) departed the smale mater fro the grete/ the clene fro the foule/ the chynny-  
 nge fro the unconuenient. Mythe is in the same wyse in p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly. seconde digested/ p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly  
 is to saye in the lyuer is sequestracion and dryed of the fode/ and of the .iiii. hu-  
 mours/ as thou shalt se in the nexte chaptyr folowynge/ whiche sequestracion  
 and dryedon is in maner of a sytynge in theyr digested p<sup>r</sup>o<sup>p</sup>erly we call in latyn *Lac*  
 the lyuer. ¶ Of this sytynge and wryng se in the chaptyr folowynge.

¶ Massa  
 sanguis.  
 .i. a ga-  
 deringe  
 of his  
 mours

Exempla



# Liber primus.

(De generatione hyine.)

Ca. ii.

Digestion  
is in .iii.  
places in  
body.



Of to knowe & were howe & on what wyse the hyne is gened/ and made in man/ and also howe the fode/ and the mete & dyncch that the mannes body is sustened by/ is digested and dysped in man. Understande that digestyon is in .iii. places of the body. In the stomake/ and in the lyuer/ and in all that other membris and lymes of man. And therfore the stomake is called the fyrst digestyon. The lyuer is called s. u. digestyon/ and all that other

Fyrste dy-  
gestio is in  
stomacke

membris are called the thyrde digestyon. The fyrst digestyon is in the stomake for every maner fode/ be it mete/ be it dyncche/ that kyndely entreteth in the bo- dy to noysse/ fyrst it draweth kyndely to the stomake/ and there it is decocted and digested/ and then the Jule of the fode is shewed and souken and dysped ryght as it were a maner of dyncche that we call Whysa/ and this doth epar the lyuer fro whom the stomake hath his kynde fode. Be in the seconde in capi. de colore katopos. And all this is through wykyng & helppng of kynde hete/ when the stomake hath this doone/ he draweth and taketh to hym/ & is to say/ his kyndely fode and noysse/ that is mooste lyke and answering to his kynde/ and to his complexion/ and late the remenaunt passe out a wey by a hole in his bothum/ that is to saye/ in the nethre ende of the stomake whiche Issue/ hole is called in Whysike. Porta stomachi. Anglice the mawe gutte/ and that is for this rayson/ for it is shette tyll that nede of kynde delivereyth the fode out of the stomake/ and as soone as it is owte it shetteth hymselfe agayne as it was before. Galenus in libro Anabemorum. In the boke of Anathomis calleth it Porto.

The mawe  
gutte

Duodeni

is called Duodenum. s. Duodene/ for this rayson for he bereth in s. lenght. xii. fngers hede vpon the ppozcyon of every man/ woman or chyld/ and it is of quantyte even with the portonarie/ then when this Duodene hath taken and receyved the fode oute fro the mawe gate/ he taketh therof that nedeth to his kyndely fode/ & that s. is left the Duodene wyngeth it and psseth it/ ryght as it were a pssoure/ and delivereyth it forth in to a nother roppe/ that is knytte and tyed too hym/ that is called Ielunium. Ielunp/ or faster/ or els the faster gutte/ that is to say/ s. boyde gutte/ receyvyth the fode out fro Duode ne/ and then he souketh and draweth out all the Jule and the moystnes of the fode and sendeth forth that same Jule or humyde to the lyuer by certayne bey nes that go fro hym to the lyuer/ whiche bey nes be called Miseric. misericordis and this is the rayson why it is called Ielunium for when he hath souken by all the Jule and all the humyde and sende it as I sayde to the lyuer/ ryght as it were in maner of a swete/ for it hath none Issue where the Jule and the moys- stourc sholde goo out/ it is as it were boyde and empty/ for it is not seme tober it passeth away. This Ieluni is rounde and clubbed and boyssous/ as sayth plake and other auctours of Anathomis/ for this rayson that the Jule and the moystourc may swete oute by dyvers small wayes and poyes of hym But Duodenum to whome Ieluni is tyed/ is playne and smothe/ and that for. iiii.

The boyd  
gutte

capsons that p fode may the more lyghtly descende that is to say goe downe  
 to Ieiuni. ¶ Also that the place sholde not be letted whiche place is necessary  
 to certayn beynes that drypeth them there for a beine comynge fro the lyuer  
 ¶ And also by capson of small shynnes and buddys helthe that ben there nere.  
 ¶ And also that p fode may haue his kyndely dwelling there still. ¶ For when  
 his tyme cometh may drawe and take fro hym that same Iule and substancrall  
 humpdye. ¶ Also the foresayd Ieiuni is called as som sayth *Porta Lactis* or *Lactea*  
*porta* anglice mylke gate And this is the whilof ophe that is to say the capson  
 for as I sayd all the Iule and all the humpdye sweeth and swelth oute of  
 hym to the lyuer. Ryght as mylke seweth and swelth out of the koomes body  
 in to the vdder. ¶ Item *Lactea porta* or *Porta Lactis* is another thyng. Se in the se-  
 conde boke. *capitulo tertio. De liuido colore.* ¶ Also the foresayd miserapris ben. viij.  
 beynes in nombze and one of them is knytte to the ouer mowthe of the stomake  
 another fast by that other ende of the stomake and the thyrde of them is fast  
 ned to the bothum of the stomake that is to say to the nether ende of the stoma-  
 ke. And all p other fyue ben knytte to Ieiuni which semeth all wey fastyng  
 as I sayd. ¶ And by these. v. miserapris passeth the Iule and the humpdye to  
 Epac as I sayd. All the remenaute that is to say the dyestis and the grounde  
 and the thyrke mater descendeth downe in too a gutte that is called in latyn  
*Saccus ventris* anglice the wombe lache for there in is all the telese of the mete the wombe  
 ¶ Also it is called *Orbus* that is to say rounde for it is rounde. ¶ Also it is called  
*Monoculus* that is to say one eye for it hath but one hole And therefore where p  
 mater cometh in it muste go out and that may it not but through moodyscra-  
 cyon that is to say bytynge and fetyng of *sistis fellis* that is to say of the galle  
 for his myght cometh to hym by certayn poris a he byteth a cōstreyne that  
 mater a kastyth it out a so it passeth in to p alions the small coppes a so forth  
 in to Colon in to longacyon and so it goth all out at the fundement. ¶ *De ilonco*  
*& ilica passio in. ii. libro. 7. ca. de colore Karopos. De Colon & Colica passione in. ii. libro. 4. ca. de albo*  
*colore.* ¶ Longacyon is the last gutte of p body for it lyeth in the tayll ende and  
 som call it the Ers gutte and the Ers gutte and the Ers coppe and som of the  
 Ers bubbe and som the Ilypn. ¶ *Cista fellis* is the buske or *Cista fellis* is properly p  
 buske of the shynne of the gall and it is taken off here also bothe for shyns and  
 for the mater that is there in And take hede that though make say that Duo-  
 denum is one and Ieiunium another as I sayd a lytell before therefore p boke  
 of Anathomis shewyth they be bothe one and this is the wykyng of p fyrst  
 degestyon that is to say of p stomake. ¶ Then when Epac receyvyth the Iule  
 and the humpdye fro the stomake on this wyse he sendeth forth the remenaute  
 to his beynes for to be soden and boyled in them for fro hym that is to say  
 Epac cometh beynes all about to euery membre a lyne in p body a to all exte-  
 myties of p body as to p armes leggis handis a fete fingers a tootes And  
 in this sendyng about Epac wykyeth and maketh a gendeth p bloode of p Iu-  
 mydite and then he receyvyth and drypeth the cleare fro the thyrke and the cle-  
 ne fro the vncleare and keepyth to hym p fode of the bloode for his kyndely na-  
 turenge a fodynge is bloode for he is not but bloode hym selfe. As it is sayd



## Liber primus.

in the fyrst chapytre. And one this sendynge forth all the other parties of the  
 þe hert is Godd takyth theyr kynde and theyr noryshynge. ¶ Cor. the hert by reason that  
 well & he is mooste noble membyr of beste/ he is grounde welles and springe of kynde  
 springe hert in all the body of man/ and therefore he gatheryth and draweth to hym the  
 of natu- mooste worthy part of the fode for to comforte and norysh the hym and encrease  
 cal hert his kynde hert and buyrdeth and groweth and sendeth it to all the membyres and  
 in man. parties about all the body/ and namely to the mooste worthy parties and pla-

ces/ fyrst as to the breste/ and to the hede/ And therefore the liver and the sto-  
 make and all the other membyres in þe body have theyr kynde hert fro þe hert  
 And therefore ryght as the sonne wyketh in all creatures hert bynethe/ ryght  
 so þe hert in man wyketh in all other membyres in the body and have theyr kynde

de hert fro þe hert ¶ But understode that stomachus hath his kynde hert fro the  
 hert not immediat/ that is to say/ not fyrste pyncepal/ and by nonother fro  
 the his þe hert. But he hath mediate fro þe hert/ þis is to say/ secundarye/ & by nonother  
 kynd he or els by mene of another for the herte & the stomake hath is of the herte/ the  
 re fro þe stomake taketh of the liver/ for the liver taketh fro the herte and groweth forth to þe  
 hert not stomake. For lyeth under þe bothum of þe stomake not enyn vnder the stomake  
 in medy but more on the ryght half/ as Galienus sayd in his boke of Anathomis/ and so  
 atly. For as is a fyre to the stomake/ and the stomake is as a pottre/ or a caudron sta-

nding over the fyre ¶ Thus spekerh booke/ & Ductours of Physyke. ¶ Cor. in the  
 secunde booke de coloribus corporis. ¶ Then Pulmo & lunges & all þe other spirytual  
 membyres draweth to hym the fode that nedeth to theyr sustenance. Pulmo and  
 spirytual membyres. se in þe secunde booke de humido colore. ¶ Then whil pulmo ta-  
 keth his parte/ he taketh also & draweth to hym kyndely that mater of the fode  
 that is mooste answerynge to hewme/ that is to say/ in the lunges/ and of that ma-  
 ter is hewme causeth and engendryed. ¶ Then Fel the galle taketh his parte  
 to hym/ and that mater answereth mooste to coloure and turneth in to coloure.

¶ And spleen the mylte taketh his part & genyeth melancolie. ¶ But For ta-  
 keth to hym the mater of bloode/ and madifyeth hym/ and cleneth hym/ as I  
 sayd/ and thus and on this wyse and in these places and in these membyres are þe  
 iiiij. humours caused and genyed. what are the iiiij. humours. se in þe iiiij. chapytre

¶ And when For hath madified/ that is to say/ purged and cleneth the mater  
 of the bloode/ the which mater of the beste substance is the vyne/ the which  
 vyne as I have sayde/ is clenysng fro the bloode and fro þe humours and it pas-

seth forth beryng with hym of the blood and of þe crudite of the bloode in to þe  
 beyne by certayn beyne that ben called *Vene capillares*. anglice hede hert beyne  
 for they are as smal as hede hert. for they may vnder the be scene with eyen  
 for samenes/ and the ben tyed to the backe/ and to the rygge bone/ aboute the  
 myddes of the rygge bone/ within the body that it berith within him of þe blood  
 and of the crudite/ for to norysh with the beyne/ and when For hath on  
 this wyse purged & cleneth/ þe chere fro þe chere/ & the clene fro þe unclene/ and  
 also after that he hath sende abote to every parte that longeth to hym/ then  
 that/ that leueth is called & is *Fumus sanguis*. or *humor sanguineus*. Anglice fyne blood

¶ Then when Pulmo hath take to hym I sayd/ that/ that is most answerynge

to be in hand than the remanent is left in pure nature. ¶ Also when the  
galle hath takē that is answering to him than the remanent is pure Coler. **Coler**  
¶ Also when the spene hath taken his parte than the rest is pure melacolye  
a blache Coler. ¶ The whā all these poyntes be thus downe & supfluytes of **Supfluytes**  
of fode. i. the refuse / & out castes / & reydens & is left is sent out about by the  
poyntes of the spene / & by other Issues of the body / as by seven to some of me- **Superflui-**  
ter & cometh from them / by seven / is superfluytes of them / by & noles thylles **te of the. iij.**  
by sylth / by the mouth through spitting / by & poyntes of the heed / through sumo **digestyon.**  
syte a sweetyng And on this wyse every member taketh of a fode that / that is  
lyphng and answering to him in hand Than when the vayne cometh to the  
reyues by venas capillates. as I said / ther he dwelleth tyl he be handly boy- **Every me-**  
led coctis & defyed / & ther he taketh his hande & his small colour / not wstan- **ber taketh**  
dyng though he take his body. i. his substā in the lyuer. And therfore sayth all **his fode.**  
auctours & vayne taketh his substā in Crate. i. in the lyuer / but he taketh his  
fourme in the raynes / & when the vayne is decorte & digested / as he shal be / & ray-  
nes sedeth it forth by. ii. small beynes to the bladder / & at his tyme he passeth  
out by & perde / these. ii. small passing places / by & which the vayne passeth from  
the raynes in to the bladder. & the bladder be called in greke Vtrichides or elia Vtrichides **iii. Digestio**  
¶ The. iii. Digestio is / as I said in all other members of the body / for ther kind  
digesteth in to fleshe / & in to the synchus / & bones / & so in to all the residue of  
the members / & than the remanent of the fode / & also the residue of the. iiii. humours bi-  
deith byll in the members / which is called the supfluytes of the. iii. Digestio / which su- **Superflui-**  
perfluyte yf it be the hand be strong & myghty in the members of the body / they **tes of the. iij.**  
putte & deliuer the supfluytes out by the poyntes & by the Issues of the spene / yf the super- **digestyon.**  
fluyte be handly myghty it thrusteth out by twete / yf it be handly dyre by sumo-  
syte. sumolite & glite / smokynge or smokynge. And vnderstand the sumolites in the  
body / is taken here & indged / as wete in trees & through handly herte / they put  
a cast out the supfluytes And thus cometh ther speneth / harte & they  
wete. And yf the members be not sufficient of power to dyre a cast out the  
supfluytes by the poyntes / than handly sedeth him agayne to the lyuer / by the same  
hernes / by the which the blode came to the members. And the lyuer sendeth forth  
the supfluytes in to the raynes / to the end of blode / & so handly deliuereth him the supfluytes  
forth out to the hand / & that in greke is called in the hand. And the hand in to the raynes  
the hand is called the hand supfluytes of the. iii. Digestio / & therfore is called the  
the hand of hote fode / which it hath well sedeth & the hand / it hath but lytel  
handing none. ¶ And the reason is / for the hand is myghty in hand self to make lytel  
putteth out the supfluytes by the poyntes of the body / & therfore when the hand  
the hand in the hand / it taketh hote mact & hand the humours make  
in the. iii. Digestio. ¶ Also the hand of the hand the hand the hand in  
the. iii. Digestio. ¶ Also the hand of the hand the hand the hand in  
by the hand / the hand the hand the hand in the hand the hand. And also of the hand  
hote fode is decorte & digested in the hand the hand. ¶ Understand the hand of the hand  
the. iii. Digestio / which the hand of the hand the hand the hand the hand  
the hand the hand the hand the hand the hand the hand the hand the hand the hand

a great supfluyte & hote of mact supfluyte in the 3 Digestio



**Purgatio  
of the Spinal  
Digestion.**

**Purgatio  
of the.ii.  
iii. Digestio**

what be re-  
not harmful  
a how they  
be caused.

**Rabot hu-  
mours.**

If colde co  
me on one  
haupinge  
er will ha  
mones ic  
caufeth by  
uers fche  
neffes,

to hym properly by hynde assigned. ¶ The fyrst digestyon hath purgation  
of his superfluytes by þ mouth aboue / & by þ Eys hole beneath ¶ The mouth by  
gallyng & gapping And þ Eys hole by eyelids. i. Wetryng & lustryng out of hote  
be ¶ The. ii. digestio hath his purgation with the byrn ¶ The. iii. digestyon hath  
his purgatio by Apostolis & sweetyng by þ pores & Junes of þ skynne ¶ Tha yf  
it be so þ the mebers of þ lymes be brynghet for toled & byrnye agayne þ  
foresaid superfluytes of þ fode to þ lyuer / tha for as moche as they may not ha-  
ue they hynde coule to þ lyuer / they remain syl cloed & there in these mem-  
bers / or els in the blode of þ beyne / or els in bothe And than is this superfluy-  
tes called Cruditas humoꝝ. anglice ravyntes of humours / or els crudus humoꝝ  
tes And for this reason / for þ mebers whiche sholde despye the fode / hath not  
perfyghetly soden may dissolued the fode / nor tojnyeth it in to there substance / &  
into they hynde / as they sholde do / or els it may be for as moche as þ fode / is  
not necessaite nor couenaunt to þ mebers / or els by cause that the stomake &  
the lyuer hath not despyeth them pꝛyghetly / for but yf þ fode be pꝛyghetly deco-  
cte & digested in þ stomake & in þ lyuer / it is impossible to be kyndely digested  
in þ other mebers of þ body / or for to be tojnyed in to they substance / ¶ Somety-  
me þ members receyved it / not despying it / & may not bepe it / no more than  
a seke man may þ despyeth after mete & may not bebothe it. ¶ Solic obigatin.  
.i. le by exaple whan þ stomake hath receyved þ fode & wrought in to þ fode /  
aft as his byndmyght & power is / & so he digesteth for þ lymes what he may / &  
tha wha þ fode passeth out of þ stomake bying not pꝛyghetly digested it despy-  
eth to come in to þ lyuer / wher he may not have his kynde dwellynge and  
receyving to receyve his kynde decoct & digested / nor have his kynde chann-  
gyng & tojnyng in to blode pꝛyghetly / by reason þ he hadde not fyrst his kynde  
be decoct & digested in þ stomake / as he shold have hadde / & so it dwellyth  
styll in þ mebers. i. in þ beyne / in the lymtes / as aforesayd / cleve & rube  
as a rose / rube & undebed. ¶ And tha yf so be þ those beyne & those places be  
myght & strong in kynde / then they rather & dyspyeth it oute by þ pores and  
other Junes of þ body / vntill dwellyth ther styll / as I sayde / ther it cloed in  
the mebers / or in the beyne / or els in bothe / & then that fode so indigest and  
rube tojnyeth in to melle & corruptyon / whiche is cause of dyntes soules and  
sekenesse & melle & spawne in maner body. ¶ Of thes be dyntes sekenesse  
grounded of þ completions of þ fode & of somtyme fode þ is kyndely bett and  
may be causeth sekenesse of blode / and the fode that is colde & may be causeth  
sekenesse of humours & the fode that is colde & drye causeth sekenesse of  
vicioumalpe & that fode that is hot & drye causeth sekenesse of Colec. ¶ Than  
yf suche matters they longe in the body / vntill yf they appere colde / rube &  
myghet / as suche vicioumalpe & rube to þ pores / vntill they rube / hel-  
peth / causeth & strongeth that same vntill humours & tha be they more  
firm & more pylous tha they were afore / for tha they shewen but in þ bo-  
dy and in þ beyne / & so they causeth melle of dyntes sekenesse & sekenesse ¶ It be  
so þ that some & some humours of dyntes sekenesse / that have & enchaunce þ fode  
& þ pores / & then is þ blode enchaunceth thorough the / & þ enchauncing of blode

causeth a febre. Febre. *Exte.* se in the .ii. libro. ca. de humido colore. If so be that  
 some of þe mater passet in to other members & places in þe body/ than þe his kynde  
 & his qualities it gendzeth in these members & places dyuers maladies/ sekenesse  
 & sores & apostumes. ¶ If it be so that þe mater be confortet & strenghted/ & it be of  
 myghte it sheweth & put out hym self by the pores/ & yf vertu & myghte faile. thā  
 of that mater that lyeth still spred and sheyt and closed vnder the skyn/ cometh  
 corrupcyons and sores. as Iche and pusses/ and scabbes/ & the moresw & suche  
 other. ¶ And yf it be so that þe mater hyde hym self in þe fleshe/ than he causeth  
 & gendzeth *Carbunculus*, *Vlcera*, *Antrixes*, *Serephulas*, *Cancers*. and suche other. *Carbunculus*  
 is a sore þis in this begynnyng/ þis is to say/ in þe growyng/ rede as a Carbuncle  
 stone/ and afterwarde whan he is cype/ it is blacke as a quenched cole/ and by  
 cause of the rednes it bereth the name of a Carbuncle. *Vlcus* is a bopple or a borch  
*Antrix* is a felon. *Serephula* is a soore that is lyke a swynes wozorng. *Cancer* is the  
 cancker. And all that I haue sayd in this Chapter I haue techt yf right  
 worde by worde. *Que & quot a medico sunt consideranda & quomodo se debet habere in iudicando*  
*capitulum tertium.*

¶ After þe thou hast vnderstande all these foresayd thynges/ yf thou wylt be  
 wyle & ware in this faculte/ þis is to say/ in demyng of vryne/ þis is to say  
 in Judgement of vryne/ yet most þe know comytours & expolytours wordes of  
 this faculte/ & they are these. which it is/ what hewe it is/ þis is to say the vryne  
 Also what is therein/ how moche it is/ and how many tymes þe vryne was made  
 toher it was made/ & the age of þe man/ or of þe woman/ and also tracellyng/ & the  
 dyete/ cote/ & hunger/ thurst/ & the meuyng/ washyng/ ctyng & drynyng/ and  
 suche other. ¶ If thou wylt be wyle in Judgyn of vryne. these poyntes muste  
 thou know. ¶ The first to know yf right al these poyntes & cōdytōs. ¶ Under  
 stande þe whan I say/ whiche. by that worde is vnderstande þe quantite of the  
 vryne. *Qualitas urine*. qualite of the vryne is the colour of the vryne. *Qualitas urine*.  
 the qualite of vryne for to speke in this purpose/ is the colour of the vryne. The  
 colour of þe vryne ben. .ii. in number. as thou shalt se in the .ii. boke the colour  
 of vryne is caused principally of these .ii. qualities. *Caliditas* & *frigiditas* hete & colde. for the more hete  
 & regneth in þe body/ the more depe of colour is þe vryne and the less hete/ the less depe is the colour of þe vryne/ as thou shalt se by all þe  
 .ii. bokes ¶ But take hede þe though I sayd/ þe qualite of vryne is caused & gendred  
 of qualites/ þis is to say/ calide & frigde/ as I sayd right now. Nevertheless it  
 is non of the .iiii. qualities for every thyng that is bodily & earthly is made and  
 compoude of þe .iiii. Elementes & of the .iiii. qualites/ & they be made of right  
 noght/ and therefore they are called *Qualitas prime*. the first qualities/ whiche ben  
 these. .iiii. Elementes/ and these. .iiii. humours/ & these. .iiii. qualities/ thou shalt  
 se in the .i. condycion. ¶ Item by this worde/ what/ vnderstande substance of  
 vryne. Take hede that these. .iiii. be alone. *Substantia urine*, *Corpus urine*, *Liquor urine*,  
 & *ipsa urina*. The substance of vryne the body of vryne the heliquous of vryne  
 the self vryne. And right as qualite/ þis is to say/ the colour of vryne is caused  
 by these. .ii. qualities. *Caliditas* & *frigiditas*. as I sayd right now in þe first condicō  
 of vryne. Right so the substance of the body of the vryne/ is caused of these. .ii. qualities.

what thyng  
 gis be to cō  
 siderid and  
 how a man  
 shall ble hē  
 to Judge a  
 vryne.

First condi  
 cyon:  
 Qualites  
 of vryne.

.ii. qualities  
 cause color  
 in vryne.

The first  
 qualites.

The second  
 condicō  
 Substance  
 of vryne.



# Liber primus.

**Qualytes  
actyfe.**

**Qualytes  
passyfe.**

**Qualytes  
actyfe.**

**Substañs  
in vyne.**

**iiij. cōdiciōs**

**iiij. cōdici-  
ōns.**

**Humoure  
that moost  
in mānes body  
is bounderth  
naissterth  
body.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

**Qualytes  
of vyne.**

siccitate & humiditate dyynes and moyses *Caliditas & Frigiditas* are called *qualitates acti*  
ue. Qualitates actyue that is to say qualytes of workyng and doyng. For  
thynges that ben made and compounde of the. iiii. Elementis worketh and  
doth by the sayd qualytes. ¶ Item *Siccitas & humiditas* are called *qualitates passiue*.  
qualytes passyue that is to say qualytes of sufferyng for thynges that are ma-  
de and compounde of the. iiii. Elementes suffer by theyr actyfe that is to say  
thynges worketh passyfe which suffereth. *Verbi gratia*. *Siccitas* kyndely constrynyth  
and holdeth together and letteth no thyng pass away fro hym as moche as  
in hym is. Therefore it withholdeth humydyte. But þe humoure that is moze nyshe  
and moze meltyng and moze watery welleteth and swetteth it in to a thynne  
and a subtyll substaunce. And then when humydyte dyffundith the mater and  
lokethe hym and dylateth hym than he maketh it obedient and abell to wor-  
kyng. And qualyte actyfe overcomech it and worketh in to hym hote or colde  
whether it be moze or lesse and somtyme of bothe lyke moche. ¶ Item vnder-  
stande that *substantia urine* that is to say the body of vyne the vyne is in. ii.  
maner wyse. For somtyme it is thycke and somtyme it is thynne. Thycke it  
may be in. ii. maner wyse. For somtyme it is thycke and somtyme it is mereliy  
thycke and so of thynned. ¶ Item by this worde what is therein that is to  
say in the vyne vnderstande these thynges þe thou seest in þe vyne of which  
all þe. iii. bokes speke. ¶ Item by this worde how moche vnderstande bothe  
colours & also þe body or substaunce of the vyne. For fyrst þe must take good hede  
of þe quante of þe colours of þe vyne. For þe deper þe colours sheweth hym þe  
moze mater it mooueth & sheweth i þe body causyng suche colours. For vbi ony  
þe humoure of þe. iiii. humours regnat & dominatur in bonne. anglice regneth & hath þe maystry  
that moost in mānes body þe is to say whā þe the body standeth must by þe humoure that  
is bounderth is to say must by þe kynd of þe cōplectio of þe humoure which of all. iiii. humours  
naissterth þe it stādeth moost by hath maystry moze thā ony of al þe other humours. For euery  
body þe is cōpōnd of þe. iiii. elementes tant moost by. ii. of the of þe which. ii. þe body  
stādeth moost by. þe one of the. ii. is p̄p̄ty souerayne & regneth & is maister  
in þe body thā þe other humours syndeth non þe them baketh nor withstandeth  
than þe is the cause & the reasō why þe humours multiplyeth his sp̄ce & maketh  
þe cauleth suche colours in þe vyne as þe kynd & þe cōplectio of þe humours sheweth  
*Qualitates & complexiones of þe. iiii. humours* þe shal se here afterwarde in þe. v. cōdi-  
cion. ¶ Item quante of þe vyne is in. iii. wyse. Somtyme it is moche and somtyme  
it is lytell & somtyme it is mene and therefore thou must take hede to þe quante  
for two maner vyne bothe in colour & in substaunce. Somtyme sheweth þe is to say  
signifyeth bothe deth & lyfe. *Verbi gratia*. vyne blake & moche meyll i quante in  
wome þe traueleth i theyr floures þe is to say þe i þe maladre þe womē cal theyr  
floures it sheweth wakyng of þe sensē. For it sheweth þe she is full of wy-  
ked mater and corrupcyon. But kynde is of myght for to mayster it and overco-  
me it and purge it and cast it out and deluyet hym self therof. But the same  
vyne in a woman that traueleth not by floures it sheweth deth but she ha-  
ue the strengre helpe. ¶ *Womanes floures* ben called in latyne *Menstrua*. In  
Englyshe womannes purll. ¶ In the seconde boke. *Tertio Capitulo*. De

*Qualytes  
of vyne  
signifyeth  
bothe deth  
& lyfe  
Verbi gratia  
vyne blake  
& moche  
meyll i  
quante in  
wome  
þe  
traueleth  
i theyr  
floures  
þe  
is to say  
þe i  
þe  
maladre  
þe  
womē  
cal  
theyr  
floures  
it  
sheweth  
wakyng  
of  
þe  
sensē  
For  
it  
sheweth  
þe  
she  
is  
full  
of  
wy-  
ked  
mater  
and  
corrupcyon  
But  
kynde  
is  
of  
myght  
for  
to  
mayster  
it  
and  
overco-  
me  
it  
and  
purge  
it  
and  
cast  
it  
out  
and  
deluyet  
hym  
self  
therof  
But  
the  
same  
vyne  
in  
a  
woman  
that  
traueleth  
not  
by  
floures  
it  
sheweth  
deth  
but  
she  
ha-  
ue  
the  
strengre  
helpe*

*Lluida colore.* Item by this woode how many tymes vnderstande these thynges pop-  
tes howe often tyme the byrpe owerth to be made and howe often gadreth and  
howe often tymes loke. ¶ The byrpe owerth to be made as nere as he may all  
at oons/as sayth all auctours for this tyson/ that it may be seen & knowen &  
drempd/ how moche of myghte the kynde is/ and howe moche workyng the byr-  
pe hath/ but somtyme it be fallerth that oome may not at oons make resonabell  
quantitye/as in passions of the byrpe and paynes of the byrpe as in. *Stranguria*, in  
*flegmon*, in *Helcosis*, in *Pitriasis*, *Trichiasis*, *Lichiasis*, *Disuria*, *Emorogia*, etc. in *Palsis*, *Stragura est gutta*  
*tim urine effusio*. Anglice when the byrpe gutteth a droppeth away now and now  
lytell & lytell. ¶ *Itē flegmon*. is a bolmyng and is a sickenesse in the necke of the  
vespe with payne in longacion. And therewith cometh a tyson upon  
the stomake/ & in the wombe about the schact/ & then they perberayhe and may  
not slepe. Item *flegmon* is a maladye when a colde cometh about the herte

¶ *Flegmon in greke tonge.* ¶ *Frigus in laten/ Colde in englyshe* *Macopis*. is pro-  
perly the Cogh/ but *flegmon* is the colde that cometh afoze. In *flegmon* somtyme  
me the byrpe is constreyned lerted and with holde & somtyme not. ¶ Item also  
*flegmō* is a hote postume caused of blode/as *Ecchylia* is a hote postume caused  
of colce & postume in this purpose is no more to say/ but a byrpe or a boche. ¶ *Itē*  
*Helcosis est ulcraio uesice*. Anglice hurtyng blamyng & wastyng of the vespe/ they  
that haue this sickenesse fele other whyle whiche they pisse huge payne/ & wha they  
feyle no payne the they lyke gretefy soze to pisse/ & purge hem self by nethe/ but  
then may they not purge them/ and when they haue made water/ the vespe is  
empty & ydell and the they feyle no payne/ somtyme they pisse as it were wyle  
corrupte & rotyn mater & aquettour/ and somtyme as it were the rasyngges and  
the suddys of a byrpe/ or of a soze/ & is all by cause of blamyng & hurtyng of  
the vespe. ¶ *Itē Pitriasis. i. furfur*. byenne for they have this maledy there byrpe  
shewed hym with bodys mooste lyke byenne/ or elles mooste lyke scales or ro-  
ues of a soze & that is by cause of scabbhede & of scumybede of the vespe *trichiasis*  
*.i. capilosit. is. anglice hery*/ for they byrpe sheweth hym/ as they were in hym  
hede herys/ & they that haue thes. ii. passions & is to say *Iditriciasis* & *Trichiasis*  
they feyle grete icche about the vespe or blader within wathe and aboute they  
taylende/ wotfoze they loue to be touchyd they aboute with a colde thyng/ by  
cause of bythyng and of ichyng and of tekelynge that they feyle there about.

*Lichiasis & Calculus* are all one *Calculus in secūdo*  
*libro Capitulo de lacteo colore*. ¶ *Disuria est constriccio ueretri*, ita omnino urina nega. anglice co-  
streyng and creppng and shewyng togydet of the yerde so moche & he maye  
not make water. *Emorogia est per secretum membrum. i. uirgam uel induram in mingendo sanguinis*  
*emanatio*. anglice when one psseth blode. *Parsitis. is. p. Paulsey* And it is taken  
here in this purpose/as when the byrpe cenneth feo one/ and he feyleth it not/ or  
els that he knowe it not. *Hec tricularius medice*. anglice this thynges sheweth in his  
boke Breyarye of medycyne. ¶ Then are somtyme so synpten with & Paulsey in paulsey in  
they pzeupe membez/ that they byrpe passeth from them/ that they knowe it not the pzeupe  
¶ *Itē som folke/as namely/ olde folke/ are so feble in bynde & they maye not membez*  
wholde there byrpe/ the in surbe case it may not be take at one tyme. It owerthas

How byrpe  
ought to be  
made gad-  
red & loyph

Hurtyng  
of the blad-  
der.



12

yne. & than þ. iij. tyme an houre oz more after take good hede thereto/ yf it be as  
 whē þ. sayst it last/ oz els yf it be tored/ thā grue iudgemēt as þ. shalt se by both  
 þ. last booke/ whā an byrne is brought to a phisiciō / for to iudge. If be se that þ.  
 byrne be chaunged/ he taketh a canicth it at þ. fyze oz in hote water/ & þis bettet  
 But as y. sake sayd in his text/ þ. this maner doyng is not to be prayled. For as  
 he sayd fōtyme whā byrne cometh fro a mā thyrch & trouby/ it sheweth gret ven-  
 tolyte oz mynde & dilectiō of þ. humours in þ. body/ and bycause of þ. grette vē-  
 tolyte/ shall be reaso of dyscombyng of þ. humours in þ. body/ þ. byrne is grosse  
 & thyrch & dyscombled & indigested/ & all is by reaso that kynd here is slowe & not  
 ryght redy nor of myght to fulfyll his kyndely workyng. And whā þ. byrne is  
 chaused at þ. fyze/ oz i hote wat thā through myght & stur & helpe of þ. decoctiō

of a crubte of a humours & knd here therof is noght of might nor of power for  
 to worke nor for to make derocion as it had wbole & byn was i a bodye therof  
 chaufing of byn maketh a fals significacio. thus saith ysaie. **Chap. lvi.** By this  
 where vnderstand the thynges & be cotened in a byn. i. a bodye & appere in the  
 byne or in a myddell benethe or els ouer all a byne. why ther that they be. **Chap. lvi.**  
 to vnderstand the place where a byn oweth to be collect gadred & taken & all  
 also a place where he ought to be lohed. The vessel were a byl ought to be collect  
 & take in/ ought to be vessel of glasse full cleue and woth/ and thynne & cleue. **In what**  
 a round & shapen as lyke a bladder of a ma/ as it may be. For yght as the par  
 tyes of the byne hept them in the vespe/ or bladder wthin a body of ma. yght so  
 by cause of a forme & the figure of the vessel/ the byne shewed hym holly in his  
 kynde/ for in this wyle all the byne & all his partyes shewe them playnly to a  
 yght & to a Judgement of ma in order of kynde/ & els not. kynde to ordayneth  
 shapeth & dyspose hymself in luche wyle in a body & in all a membris of a body/  
 amonges those thyngis ther be *Contenta urinc.* anglice bodyes in the byne. as all  
 these. iiii. boke specyfeth/ which bodyes ben departed & deuoyded fro the membris  
 i a body/ and they deuoyded and partyd putteth them in the byne/ yght as  
 they be caused and genoyred in the body. The nether partye/ benethe a myddell  
 parte in the myddell/ & the ouerit parte about. The partyes of a ouer membris in  
 a body of man/ be kyndely most lyght/ & the reason is/ for a ouerit partyes in a  
 body are fede & kept and nuryshed/ w a blode of a herte/ whiche blode is more  
 hote and more lyght by way of kynd/ than any other blode & is in the body of  
 man/ or of beest. The mydde partyes of the body is fede lesse/ & the nether par  
 tyes more lesse/ & for this reason/ these resolucongs these deficacons/ or a pty  
 es/ at taken of that/ that cometh of the membris & falleth away fro them/ and  
 the places within the body of man sheweth the pporcionaliter in a byn where  
 they ben caused and genoyred in the body within man/ the place there the byn  
 oweth to be lohed it oweth to be a cleue place and a byght but nat ouer myth  
 byght/ for ouer myche byghtnesse maketh the byne sal to some of the same  
 coler and byghtnesse/ and so thou may be dysseyued. **And then hol.** The place  
 de the bynail on the yght hande/ and yf the lyght be byght and redious a  
 boue and grete reflexions of lyght/ as it falleth somtyme by ranse of glas or  
 whyte walles or of other thynges that are byght/ and geueth reflexions of  
 lyght/ putte the lefte hāde there betwene the face & the bynail that wytes of  
 a lyght be nat dissegregat & is a say/ not dyspyled through redious shynnyng  
 of a loune/ or of a pyre/ or els of another thyng/ & yf a be wode byght aga  
 ynt a haue hāde by kynde a bynail. i. betwene a bynail & a byght are/ deuoy  
 lyng & shadowyng/ a stroke of a are. **Chap. lvi.** Thou haste witerly mysed the  
 byn on all a popntes & cōdycions & I haue sayd before/ mene it a shagge it a lytel  
 & softly & lyghtly/ & holde it styl a lytel/ & in a moouyng take he de it there in a  
 pere & postalis/ & whether & postalis mene hi lyghtly/ or deuely/ & also in a cell  
 yng/ whether it drame to a place ther it was before/ & in to a same forme & fi  
 gure as he was before/ or els he deuoydeth hym/ or dyspleth hym self in byn  
 partyes of the byne. Of al these popntes see in the laste boke of & postalis after  
 all these popntes/ smelle therto with thy nose/ and yf it doth syncke/ or haue



# Liber primus.

what tyme  
bryn ought  
to be made  
a losp.

For this ca  
pion.

John bat. for  
that is the  
right naturall  
heat of the  
liver. It is  
the day is  
suffered only  
by

Wypne of  
chylidryn.

John bat. for  
that is the  
right naturall  
heat of the  
liver. It is  
the day is  
suffered only  
by

Wypne of  
a folke.

any wycked savour/other the byrne shold have. Of kynk of byrne/le in dyuers  
places both in p. ii. boke & in the. iii. ¶ It shold receyve p. it oweth to be loosed  
at handell lpgot/when it nedeth on the same wyse as by daye. ¶ It by this  
worde/when/understande bothe the tyme when the byrne oweth to be made  
& also tyme whe it oweth to be loosed/as agaynst p. fyrtt ponnte. Understade it  
oweth to be made in p. moynng/oz els agayne p. day/whe it is wel & perfectly  
degested & gadied in p. velye/ & after that he hath hadde his kynde slepe & reste/  
and kynd be redy for to delivert it out for then is his wyzkyng of kynd complete  
And therfore p. byrne that is wrought & degested kyndely by myght as I sayd  
is for to be gude Jugemet certayn therof/ & of no other byrne but suche. ¶ And  
this is the philosophie for when me walketh/oz waketh his kynde is moved &  
waded & is unquere/ p. is to say/ hath not his kynd rest/ but ma that is doyng  
& belye & occupied by his. b. wyrttes/ in thoughtes & dedes outward/ p. ma hath  
for to doone & therfore/ as longe as ma is occupied more outward/ the inner  
de/ p. kynde here is lesse myght/ & of lesse wyzkyng within. But whe may hath  
his kynde reste and slepe/ then hath kynde his reste/ & his quiete/ & is not letted  
through other occupacyōs outward/ and p. tyme he wyzkerh most myght about  
deccorpo & degestpo of p. fode & of p. humours And therfore is p. moynng byrne  
better in all maner poyntes the any other ¶ whe it oweth to be loosed & how ma  
ny tymes/ it is sayd. ¶ Item by p. vii. worde whe I say I ge understond one  
maner of byrne/ is aged folke. another maner byrne in folke saylyng for kind  
¶ Chylidryn have byrne pallyshe and thyn/ for though it so be they be natura-  
lyte/ that is to say/ kyndely. *Calidi & humidi. anglice/ hote and moyste* and because  
of theyz hete/ there byrne sholde be clere & hygh of coloure & because of moyste  
nes thyche/ therfore for as moche as they ben glotons/ and kepeh not certayn  
diere. Therfore kynde hete is cheked and straungled/ and that is the cause why  
that byrne shewith whetyshe and pallyshe and thynnyshe/ as it were sayne  
where. ¶ That chylidren are all daye so etyng/ is because of possibylite of theyz  
mater and nede of theyz encreysyng and woryng/ and because pynceppally of  
streytnes of the wayes of theyz byrne. theyz byrne is thynnyshe. ¶ Jonge  
folke are kyndely *Calidi & sicc. anglice hote and drye* because of theyz hete/ theyz  
byrne ought to be depe in coloure/ that is to say/ cytryn/oz subrubicibus/ & p.  
because of sicche/ thynne & clere and byghte *Citrium & subrubicundus* ¶ In theyz  
poynte Chapytres. ¶ Olde folke by comen course are *Frigid & sicc. anglice colde*  
& drye/ and upon that complexion/ theyz byrne is faynt of colour/ as subcitrim  
oz selowyshe/ oz palyshe/ faynte in coloure/ because theyz kynde hete begyn-  
neth to fayle/ and colde begynneth to regne in them/ and then because of dry-  
nes of melancolpe/ that is to say/ the same humours that is called so/ suche hu-  
mours is colde of kynde & begynneth to regne in the. ¶ Folke saylyng & bleded  
loze eage/ are *Frigid & sicc. colde & drye/ & therfore theyz byrne is Alb. & p. anglice/*  
whyte and thyche. whye because of colde. thyche because of tumpdyte/ &  
also because of plenty of superfluytes of p. flemme/ which superfluytes cenneth  
and floweth in them to the byrn/ and so doth it not yet in olde folke. Of hu-  
mours & complexions & of ages of man is here after. ¶ It by this word/ kynde

and so forth

vnderstande compleiion in kynde/ for ryght as age workeþ in byrþe of man/  
 ryght so doth compleiion of man. ¶ And for to knowe what compleiion/ is vn-  
 derstande that there are.iiii. Elementes Ignis, Aer, Aqua, & Terra. anglice fyre/ ayre  
 water and erthe. ¶ Icem there ben.iiii. humours Sanguis Colera Fleuma & Melancolla  
 anglice Blode Colre Fleume and Melancolie. ¶ Nowe are there.iiii. qualites  
 answeryng kyndely to these.iiii. Elementes/ and to these.iiii. humours. Caliditas  
 Secitas Frigiditas & humiditas. anglice hotnes/ and drynes/ coldnes/ and moystnes.  
 ¶ This worde answeryng in kynde/ as in this mater/ is as moche to save/ as  
 accordyng in kynde. ¶ Nowe these.iiii. qualites answer bothe to the Clemen-  
 tes/ to the.iiii. humours. For bloode answereth to ayre Colre to fyre Fleume to  
 water/ and Melancolie to erthe. ¶ For ayre and Sanguis ben Calidi & humidi  
 Ignis & Colera Calidi & seci Aqua & fleuma frigidi & humidi ¶ Terra & Melanco-  
 lia frigida & sicca. And thus thou mayst se/ howe these.ii.iiii. answer to the fyrt  
 iii. These.iii.iiii. answer to bothe these.iiii. And of these.iiii. every thyng  
 that is bodyly and erthly is compouned and made/ for vpon the temperaſe &  
 dyſpoſycon of these.iii.iiii. standeth every maner helth/ and unhelth of man.  
 And se howe Sanguineus is he/ that is sanguyne compleiō for he hath moſt  
 of ayre and blode. And ſo his compleiion is Calidus & humidus. hote and moſte/ &  
 ſuche ben whyte & rede in the face with a rube of amburū here. Colericus ſtanc  
 moſt by the fyre and Colre/ and he is Calidus & ſiccus. hote and drye And they ben  
 blake of here/ and pelowe blake ſhe in the face/ and ſome with a rubihede  
 in the chekes/ that is the gentell colour/ and moſt clene. Fleumaticus. by wa-  
 ter and fleume/ and ſo he is Frigidus & humidus. here amburū/ or blake here/ and  
 ryght whyte in the face Melancolicus. by erthe and melancolie/ and therefore that  
 compleiion is Frigidus & ſicca. colde & drye/ blake here & ſwarthy & palowgh face.  
 ¶ Als other is nothyng e/ is bodyly & erthly/ but that it is bothe hote & colde/  
 moſte and drye all.iiii. For it is made as I ſayd of all.iiii. Elementes. But  
 vpon that Element of humour that the body hath moſt of/ by that Element/  
 or by that humour ſtandeth his kynde by and of hym he bereþ his name of  
 compleiion. ¶ Nowe for to ſpeke of man/ there is no man/ nor woman in  
 this worlde/ but that they muſte be calidus and humidus/ but not withſtan-  
 dyng one may be more and another leſſe. Verū tamen. Peraventure this man is  
 calidus and humidus in euen temper betwix the.iiii. qualites. But for as  
 moche is in this cauſe/ the kynde of his compleiion encreaſeth/ leſſeth/ ſaynther  
 and encreaſeth/ it befallth peraventure/ that his hete encreaſeth/ and his  
 moſtes vanyſheth and leſſeth/ and ſo he fallth to be Colericus/ wher afore  
 he was Sanguineus. For Colericus/ as I ſayd is naturally Calidus and ſiccus  
 and Sanguineus/ naturally Calidus and humidus/ and ſo becauſe of inequa-  
 lyte of humours/ that is to ſaye/ by reaſon of onen proportion of them/ whe-  
 be many tyme in euyl dyſpoſitiō/ ſoft unhelthful/ & therefore in every copleiō  
 a man may wor & encreaſe more in one humour then in another/ as I ſayd  
 ¶ Theſe are y ſayd of copleiōs ſanguiney comly are long becauſe of hete/ for

iiii. coplei-  
ōs

iiii. humou-  
res.

iiii. qualy-  
tes.



**States of** hete is lyght by way of kynde And therefore naturally it draweth bptward fatts  
**cöplexions** by reason of humedite for humedite naturally terdylateth and draweth abyode  
*Colerici longe and slender/longe because of colre. for Colera draweth bptward*  
**Colerphie.** because that he is hete of kynde slender because of siccite/as it foloweth well  
 by that I sayd in the seconde condicion. Siccite dilateth nat noz spredeth hym  
**flagmatph** self abyode/ but rather contraye. *Humatici lytell a fatte. lytell because of colde*  
 for colde is cöstrictyfe and drawyng togyther/ and byndeth togyther. fatte by  
**Melanco-** cause of humedite/as I sayd before. *Melancoli lytell and slender. lytell because*  
 lyke. of drygdyte/as I sayd afoze. And slender also because of siccite/as I sayd be-  
 fore. But of thymne state of complexyon varyeth & chaungeth per accidens that is  
 for fatnes.  
**Somtyme** to say by dyvers chaunces and fortunes and cases as it befallith comynly. for  
**cöplexions** somtyme they that be Colerici and they that be Melancolic/ are fatte and that  
 chaungeth is because of moche plenty of good mete and drychtye/ and of moche ceste and  
 by fozlle. ease/ and such other popytes. Item somtyme Sanguenici & Humatici/ are  
 gracilis/ anglice small/ slender/ and thynne/ because of abstynacye & travelyng  
**Divers me** and such other causes. Item some are moze lytell thā they shold be/ be kynd  
 be p accidē complexion/ and that may be because of lytell nuryshyngs of the matryce/ or  
 of greter & because of lytell sperme of the father/ or of the mother in tyme of generacyon/  
 of lesser sta- or of bothe/ or els because of evyll keepyng in the yfouthye. *Sperma is in yfconde*  
 ture then boke capitula de ludo colore and in the propre chapytre De spermate. *Sperma*  
 nature re- is whyte hode/ whyte seede/ or whyte mater/ that passeth from a man/ and from a  
 quyyeth. beest in tyme of generacyon. Item yf thou is an byrns which thou knowest  
 not what person made it. & the tokyly whether it be man/ or woman/ or chylde  
 and of what age/ and of what complexion. The byrns of man/ woman/ and  
 of beest/ is anone in the nexte condicion folowyng/ as to the age of man I have  
 afore in the fyrst condicion now to the complexion/ know well that yf *Humiditas*  
 & *Humiditas* capneth in the body/ yf is to say/ yf the body stande by the qualities  
 as it is in them/ that is of Sanguine complexion holy/ yf byrns is rede/ or redlyche  
 and menely thynke. Rede because of calidite. Thynke because of humydyte. for  
**colozph by** Sanguine complexion maketh such byrns/ yf is to say/ rede & thynke And und-  
 ne. stande/ this rednes and thynkenes/ for a byrnt rednes/ with amene thynkenes/  
**flagmatph** And whan the byrns sheweth hem so/ be of the that made it be of Sanguine cö-  
 byrns. plexion and in good helth. If the byrns apere golden/ Citryne/ colours/  
 and thynne and clere/ and yf he be Colerici it sheweth that he is hole. That it  
**Melanco-** is golden/ or citryne/ is because of hete/ thynne and clere/ because of siccite. for  
 lyke byrns *Colericus is hete and drye/ and therefore maketh he such byrns.* If the byrns be  
 lyke & gross/ whyte and grete and thynke and he be Humatice/ it sheweth that he  
 byrnes cau is hole. It is also because of drygdyte/ and thynke because of humedite/ for *Humiditas*  
 seth thyn- ma/ that is to say *Humatice complexion* is frigid & humide/ and therefore such is the  
 nes in byr- byrns of that complexion/ or els pale and thynke/ by the same reason. Item  
 ne and moi yf the byrns be yellowe/ or whyte/ and thynne/ and subtyl/ that is to say/ clere  
 lnes cau- and byrnt/ in one that is melancolyke/ it sheweth that he is hole/ it is yellowe  
 seth thyn- or els whyth/ because of drygdyte Thynne because of siccite/ & subtyl by the  
 nes. same reason. for siccite causeth alwaye clerenes and byrhtnes in the byrns.

as hump dite causeth euer more thynnes. Item by this woorde he oʒ the vnderstande whether the byrne be of man/ oʒ of woman And vnderstande that the byrne of man/ and the byrne of woman/ are full lyke/ yf they be bothe of one complexion And full harde to knowe asonder And so is also the byrne of an hote man Colyke And the byrne of an hote woman Danguyne. But one by the byrne of man is euer more naturally more lyght and more bryght/ than is womans byrne And the womans byrne is more swartylke and more deke and dymylke than is mannes byrne And the reason is For a woman of what complexion she be/ she is frigida & humida And man of what complexion he be/ he is naturaliter Calidus and siccus more than a woman And also by cause of fylthes and corrupcyons/ that byede in them/ more then in men For moche of her complexions/ corrupcyons/ of fylthes & superfluytes of humours in them gendzeth and draweth/ and descendeth naturaliter downe to hyr matryce For to helpuer and purge them oute by that membre/ that is to say/ by the matryce/ and so out by the valve/ that is to say. by þ gate of hyr body/ that is to say of hyr ppeue membre/ of such fylthes and corrupcyons cometh her maladye/ that is called womans maladye For noman noʒ body hath þ maladye/ but women onely And women calle it her floures/ and this sickness is called in laryn mensura. The matryce of women is the sentine of womans body. Sentina properly is the gutter of a shyppe oʒ of a bechyn/ oʒ the place where the fylthe passeth oute awayne/ ryght so all the fylthe and corrupcyon of womans body draweth thither as to his gutter. Of the matryce and properties therof/ and of womans euillis/ loke in the ii. boke in the .iii. chapytre. De lymdo coloz. And we know well/ that nother whyke noʒ auctours of whyke gnyeth other lettyng noʒ other reuole/ i. to haue dyscrecyon/ oʒ knowyng bytwene mannes byrn and womans byrne/ as I sayd ryght now. If thou wilt lerne to Judge beestis water from mannes water. This testyt Auicenna In his boke of byrnes The more nere that mannes byrne is to the fyre in mene distance/ the more thynke it seemeth to the fyre But other beestis byrne contrario/ the more nere the more thynke it seemeth to the fyre. And also byrne of man/ oʒ of woman oʒ of chyld/ euermore hath a manner of byrnes in hym/ by which it is all waye eue for to knowe For beestis water yf it be in an byrnall it is euermore whetyske oʒ pelowyske/ and no bryghtnes therein And be it neuer so cleere out of the byrnall/ it seemeth thynke in the byrnall/ and neuer bryght. If it so be that byrne of man/ woman/ oʒ chyld be minged with water of a beeste/ mannes byrne halbeth hym above/ and beestis beneche/ oʒ els they draw all in plottes by them self/ For byndely that one wyl not melle with that other Item by this woorde traueyle/ vnderstande belynes/ as study/ thought/ traueyle/ wherbynes/ remyng/ rydyng/ and such other manner thynges For by traueyle and belynes/ cometh meuyng and strepyng. and by meuyng and strepyng/ the body is chaufeth. And by chaufeth of chaufyng of the body/ þ humours be consumed and wasterd And so it causeth rednes and thynnes in the byrn dycon. For blade of his owne bynde is hote/ and when getteth here chaufeth hym/ be

byrne of women.

The 7. degree of the byrne

The byrne of a beest.

that is to say  
that is to say  
that is to say



## Liber primus.

is moze hote per accidens/ that is to saye/ vnproperly/ and vnkyndely hote. For than it is hote other wyse than by his kynde And than that acciden-  
 tall hete/ that is to saye/ vnkynde hete distempereth and vndyspollyth and  
 mynischeth/ that is to saye/ lesseth the humydtye of the bloode And than this  
 vayne is rede/ because of suche vnkynd hete/ & thynne because of mynyschyng  
 howe rest & of humydtye. ¶ Item by trauayle vnderstonde his contrarie/ that is to saye/  
 ease hurted rest and ease For reste/ there it is ouer moche/ it congeleth/ that is to saye/  
 man. constreyneth and byndyth and withhaldeyth the kynde hete/ and restreyneth/  
 that is to saye/ cooleth the complexion And that causeth in the vayne thynnes  
 and wanne colours/ and rawe/ and indigested. ¶ Item ouer moche reste and  
 ease maketh superfluytes and corrupciōs of wycketh humours to be gendryd  
 in the body/ and are cause/ that the body may not deluyne hym of them by su-  
 mosytes by the poyrs and by swete For ryght as excess trauayle harmeth &  
 noyeth the kynde Ryght so excess of reste and of ease/ noyeth and greueth þ  
 kynde For all thynges loueth mene/ and hateth excess. If it be so that one  
 take colde withoutwarde/ than is the vayne whytyshe and crude/ that is  
 to saye/ rawe. If the colde be grete/ it ouercometh the inner partyes of þ bo-  
 dy/ and peryssheth the places of digestyon/ and congeleth the kynde hete/ as  
 Congelaci  
 on. I sayde ryght now Conglare. Is for to congele properly In englyshe for  
 to freese and wyke/ as froste doth in wetenesse And also it restreyneth/ and  
 letteth and withholdeth the Colre fro his kynde decoctyon and digestyon/ ly-  
 tell colde entrynge in to the poyrs/ stoppeth them and letteth/ that the kynde  
 moystoure may not haue there yssue/ by the poyrs of the body And therfore  
 they be left closed vnder the hyde And than they war/ and encrese.  
 And in some folke it causeth fevers and feyntynes and euill dysposicions  
 And suche maner folke nedeth good keepnge But in some men kynde is  
 myghty/ and draweth/ and turneth them in to the lyue/ and so by myght/  
 xi. condicio kynde sendeth them forth to the reyns/ and so it passeth oute with the vayne  
 and causeth in the vayne a whyttenesse. ¶ Item by this worde Ire. vnderstōd  
 Ire wzath de every maner passyon in mynd. as wzath/ sorowe/ now and chā/ dyde/  
 care/ thought and studye/ and suche more. For euery maner lyche passyon/  
 causeth the kynde hete/ the spicuous/ and the bloode to calefacte/ and chaufe/  
 other inward or outward/ or els bothe. Also whan the herte is calefacte/  
 than is the bloode of the body moensh/ and chaunged/ and distempred/ and  
 chafyng of because there of all the humours/ and also the vayne lacketh depenesse in þ  
 the bloke. coloure. ¶ Item by this worde Diete. vnderstōde reuylng and keepnge  
 in lyuynge For in well reuylng standeth moche the helthe/ and the vnhele  
 xlii. condicio in man As in etynge and drynkyng in mesure/ and tyme whan kynde as-  
 beth/ that is to saye/ whan the appetyte wylleth or deuyeth And also in le-  
 in good di- uynge of/ alway somewhat with appetyte/ so that kynde may be restred/  
 eth standyth and not oppresed And also in metes and drynkes and reuylng and agreyng  
 the belt of to his complexion Also in trauelyng/ clothyng/ reste/ sleppng/ and wakyng  
 man and so in all other lyche poyntes For if all lyche poyntes be kepte/ the bo-  
 dy is hole and sounde And than the vayne sheweth hym after the kynde coun-

plexion of the body And if not the body is unwhole and there after it sheweth  
 hym self in the byrns But otherwyle þe bynde is myghty and overcome  
 by the popntes But neuertheless hegh bynd ouer mayster somliche popntes  
 he ouer maystereth not all and thogh he ouer mayster somtyme he ouer  
 maystereth not alwey. ¶ Also good apper helpeth moche to the helth of man  
 modde conte in best of aye and most helthom. After that helyly conte he  
 conte next that medewe and playn conte woyle is fenyshe and moyle  
 conte And conte that is ful of molis and lokis. ¶ Stony conte is helyly  
 helyly of flosse and moddy. Fygge of humide fatte and tough and clayshy  
 Callys humide and dry Callys of flosse. ¶ Item by this woide Cure vnderstande  
 troupe and helynes in mynde as I sayde in the ix. condition upon this  
 woide Cure. For helynes thogh þe hart meureth seurely by flosse and di  
 fferent the humours in the body and gendryd in them vnderste here  
 that helynes here by flosse and by tempereth the body wherby þe byrns  
 is more thow that is to saye more depe in colours And pyncepally vnder  
 stand by this woide Cure. Scudye thogh and care. For and yf it be co  
 moche and minely with moche scyrynge it byscureth and vndereth the bo  
 dy. ¶ Item by this woide hunger vnderstande fastyng and abstynce from  
 meate and byrns. For fastyng and grete abstynce maketh an enty wombe  
 ¶ For Aspyde sayd that the enty wombe abouketh the byrns wherfore it  
 seemeth to be that they that eateth lytell and byrns lytell maketh byrns  
 well coloured that is to saye ruddy or ris cede and thynne For when here  
 is ouer mayster and meate with byrns as it is in them that eateth ly  
 tell and byrns lytell. ¶ Item the byrns is multiplied in his colour. But  
 they that eateth meate and full and face they make byrns ruddy wherby the  
 ¶ Item by this woide Curyng vnderstande quantity and qualite of fode  
 for grete plenty and mince flosse in meate and byrns causeth byrns  
 helynes and flosse. ¶ Item for grete vnsom. As I shal techy. ¶ One is this  
 For grete ruddy of meate and byrns. ¶ Item the byrns here is ouer  
 chary and byrns and byrns of grete flosse of digestyon is flusht and flapped  
 lette and eple the fode be perfectly defusd the blode is not perfectly co  
 plete. ¶ Item also byrns may be made by perfectly byrns as he shold ha  
 ne. ¶ Item the flosse is a lye of humours and byrns that is to saye wherby the  
 and ruddy and the manner of the matter the glosse and this byrns  
 here flosse. ¶ Another reason is that for grete flosse meate and byrns may  
 flusht the body with wharic flosse in the body that is to saye when it is  
 ouer moche the flosse here is flusht and hard and byrns then and so the  
 blode congeled and here flosse myght in his woyle. And the flosse the  
 byrns flusht out of the body that is to saye wherby the flosse here is flusht  
 waterly and flusht. ¶ Item by this woide Cure vnderstande byrns and byrns  
 and ruddy of flosse here of fode flosse the byrns here in the body and the  
 byrns the byrns here in the body the byrns here in the body. And byrns  
 causeth meate and byrns and byrns in the byrns. ¶ Item the byrns  
 causeth lytell and byrns lytell and byrns lytell and byrns lytell.

xviii. codi  
 cyon.

Curyng .i.  
 vnderstand  
 quantite of  
 fode.

Excesse of  
 meate and  
 byrns.

Excesse of  
 meate and  
 byrns.



Moderate  
meate con-  
foceteth na-  
ture.

Qualytes  
of meate di-  
uersely the  
byrne.

is to say / reasonable mesure / it hether byndeth all the body / and feedeth and in-  
streneth and tempereth all the lymes and parties in mannes body / & halbeth  
it norrysheth the lyfe And in as muche as is in hym / he causeth such byrne  
As the complexion of the body affecteth / and right as the fode dyuerseth the byrne  
vpon dyuersytes of the qualite of the fode / so is to say / vpon that it is moche  
or els mene / lyght so it varyeth & dyuerseth the byrne. Upon the dyuersytes  
of his qualytes / that is to say / vpon that he is colde / or hote / moche / or dyne /  
in complexion. *Item* fode that is byndeth hote causeth byrne rube and  
clere / as they that eat hote meates and drynkes and spices / for hote / of such  
fode syteth & chaufeth the lyuer. And through that chaufing the blode of the  
lyuer menyfeth his good colours and hote / and maketh them humble for to  
worke And then the spyrtes of the herte / maketh of that hote & drye blode  
gryueth it agayne / and so the byrne is calefacte and well coloured. *Item* colde  
meate / is to say / fode that is colde in complexion maketh the byrne pale  
indigest / for coldnes lesseth the herte in the lyuer And also the spyrtes  
of the herte / and so letteth and focdeth digestion. *Item* fode that is moche  
thyrereth the byrne / for the bynde humedite of the fode byndeth & chaufeth  
moystnes of the lyuer / and the more that the moistnes of the lyuer be / the less  
must the herte of the blode be wyl spous of the herte / then *Item* fode that is  
it hether the blode / and causeth rudenes and chynnes in the byrne. *Item*  
meate that is drye of bynde causeth the byrne chynne / and clere / and oftem-  
mes rede / and somtyme Cierne / for the drynes of the meate / byndeth & dyereth  
the humedite of the blode / and so it causeth drynes in the body / and drynes  
of the body causeth indynes in the byrne. *Item* fode that is colde / and  
tyme the stomake is colde / and that because of his coldenes he swageth and  
lesseth the herte and the feruour of the blode / and so causeth and letteth the  
depnes of the colours in the byrne And of the same / or mannes complexion  
be hote / than dyne fode dyuerseth the byrne in so far as it is hote / or colde.  
If there be  
plexion be colde / it dryeth it in to whiter colours. *Item* fode that is  
if good / sayth that some meates in man causeth good humours / and some euill.  
Item drynke dyuerseth the byrne in. And gather wyl / by cause of qualyte /  
and also by cause of quantyte / and by cause of the bynde / and  
by cause of colours / of drynke / and by cause of qualyte / quantyte / of dryne  
he / lyke as I sayd right now of meate. *Item* of the bynde of drynke  
as if the drynke be moche drye / or moche weyle / sayd drynke maketh  
a subyle multypleth the byrne / is to say / maketh one fode to be made in qual-  
tyte to be made in bynde / sayd drynke maketh the byrne to be made in clere  
thyn and byght of colour / sayd drynke maketh the bynde to be made in clere  
may tell what they are / as the Apothecaries that best hold knowe. Some of  
them say that *Item* fode is drye / and some say that *Item* fode is bynding  
as wyne byndeth at the bynde And some say that *Item* fode is frute / or  
namely as *Item* fode is drye / and some say that *Item* fode is constrepte  
that is to say / bynding And some say that *Item* fode is to say / drye / and  
as bynding And some say that *Item* fode is to say / drye / and  
as bynding And some say that *Item* fode is to say / drye / and







ouercomeh with excesse of colde/ than be the humours of the body all desolate  
and dystyute and restayned fro her kynde hete/ so that kynde may not wor-  
ke nor beere wile in the body. ¶ And ryght so as this terme *Adustion complet* is  
alwaye to be vnderstonde in regarde of hete/ moztly for too lape/ or speke  
*Adustinum* anglise byennynge/ as whan the humours/ or some of the humours/  
are traneyled and dystempereth throughecesse of vnkynde hete But adustys  
cōplet/ is whā excesse of vnkynde hete/ is moche & where as is no helthe/ or  
vnnethes any. ¶ Chan these forsayd. ii. colours Some Tuctours drydeth  
them vpon the dysposicion of digestyō These colours some be token mozt  
tyfyracion of digestyon. as niger color & liuidus color. ¶ What is moztifica-  
cyon I sayde ryght now. *Niger & Liuidus*. Se in theyr owne ppozre Chapytre  
Somtyme colours betokeneth ppyuacyon of dygestyon/ as album/ lacteus/  
glancus/ and karopos/ ppyuacyon/ that is to lape/ teupnge and benymynge/  
As I sayde of this worde *Pyuare* teupnge and benymynge. And *Pyuacyon*  
is taken here/ for lessynge and wanyshynge/ and febleishynge/ and small  
of dygestyon. ¶ Item some colours sheweth begynnynge of degestyon/ as  
subpallidus & pallidus & subcitrinus. And some dygestyon complet/ as Citri-  
nus & Rufus & subrufus. Some excesse of dygestyon/ as Rubens/ Rubicundus  
& subcubicundus. And some colours adustyon of digestyon/ as *Inopos* & *bra-*  
*nos*. And some sheweth adustyon complet and mozttyfyracion also/ as blacke  
colours and grene colours/ whiche grene colours is moost lyke a lef of grene  
cale/ whiche we calle whyte cole And blacke moost lyke the lef of a blacke ca-  
le. ¶ Of moztification and adustion complet/ I haue spoken of afoze. ¶ Item  
some drydeth these. ii. Colours of byrne/ vpon the dysposicion of the hu-  
mours For the humours are mater and cause of the colours in byrne And  
that is moze better deuydyng/ as many Tuctours sayth And they say that  
all colours fro Citryne downwarde/ betokeneth that plente of melancolpe  
with lytell flewme reyneth & hath domynyon in a body. ¶ Vnderstande  
this Melancolie is taken in. iii. maner of wyse. Somtyme it is taken in spe-  
che/ for one of the. iii. humours/ that is to say/ *Sanguis*, *Colera*, *Fleuma*, & *Melancolia*  
Of whiche it is sayd suffycently In the fyrst boke In the thyrde chapytre.  
And somtyme it is taken for excesse/ of that humours And on this wyse it is  
take here And somtyme it is take for a passio of p soule/ as pye & wrauth & suche  
other. Cyrrine colours sheweth Colce & flewme/ but moze of the colce Rufus  
color/ is a mene body somdele moze thynne/ thā thicke/ shewith p the arte-  
riis & the blode of the arteriis are good and myghty & namely p blode of p ate-  
riis/ whiche blode & the arteriis is mater & cause of kynde hete/ & of the spūs  
of lyf. Arteriis properly be p byrnes by p which/ p spyrutal medyes draweth  
to them ayye And spūs be p poris of lūgis And therfore arteriis are as moch  
for to say as arteriis/ p is to say/ drawynge ayye/ here is accordeth *Galienus*  
in his anathomys. There he sayth thus arteriis are ceterp byrnes by which  
p hete is tryed & ayyte to p lūgis & draweth to hym ayye by p poris of p lūgis  
& p arteriis passe forth by p other pyres ther p powcis be. *pucis* i englyshe  
*Pullus* in latyn p byrnes in p wyllies And pullus is often taken for p place

what is a  
dustyon.

drydig of  
p. ii. colors  
of byrne.

*Adustion complet*  
is a drygynge.

Another de-  
uydyng of  
ii. colours  
of byrne.

*Galienus*  
in his anathomys.



## Liber primus.

In þe helth  
of þe lyuer  
standyth þe  
helth of the  
blode.

that is to say / for the whelkes of the hande / whiche ben the spirytuall meynes  
le in the ca. De liuido colore. and in ca. De haterpos ¶ Item Rufus colour with a  
body somdel more thicke than thynne. shewyth that sanguis Epatis / blode  
of the lyuer cyegeth in the body. whan sanguis Epatis cyegeth / than is  
Epatis hole and in good tempoure / and that is cause and token of hele a mozt  
synge of lyfe for in helth of the lyuer / standeth the helth of the body pyncy-  
pally ¶ Rubens & subrubens. clere and thynne / and somdele more thynne than  
thicke / sheweth as rufus / but not so petyth for rubens sheweth more mene  
temper / than rubens or subrubens for rubens and subrubens sheweth mo-  
re excess and dystemperance of herte / than doth rufus. ¶ Item Rubens & subrubens  
color. with a thicke and a troublely body / sheweth grete dysturbynge of the  
humours in the body. ¶ Rubecundus & subrubecundus. sheweth that colre cyegeth  
in the body / out of mesure / and euergoeth the blode and enflameth the blode.  
And yf the coloure in the byn be so moche rubecunde / þe it be most lyke pur-  
puras coloure / it sheweth that the blode is thicke and dyke / a that the mozt-  
nes of the blode is token out and drawen away fro byn through excess and  
dystemperance of excess of herte ¶ Inopos that blode is thicke and clem-  
med and clodded togyther / and sheweth and byent and menged w foule flew  
me corrupte ¶ Cyanos shaweth thysme / saue that cyanos is sombat woyle  
than inopos / for it shaweth more adustyon / than doth inopos ¶ Viridis color.  
in the byn / sayth euermore that melancolia cyegeth in the body / and that  
kynde and mozt humydris of the bodye is waspeth and fordon and distord  
And also that the blode / hath losse his owne kynde coloure and his rubinesse  
¶ Luidus color / in byne / shaweth flewme and malancolye.

¶ Explicit primum capitulum De coloribus in generale & in comuni. Incipit secundum capitulum de  
coloribus in specialibus. Et primo de Nigro colore.

Here en-  
deth the .i.  
chapitre of  
colours in  
generall / a  
begynnyth  
the seconde  
chapytre of  
colours in  
specyall.



¶ Versteade þe thou shalt knowe blacke colours in byn euer  
more by a swartynes / a decknes / a bynnes / in the byne  
most to blacknesse warde / somtyme mozt lyke a hoire /  
blacke shynge and glytteryng And somtyme mozt  
lyke a Rauens fethre And somtyme mozt lyke the face of  
a man of Ethioppe And suche maner blacknes in the byn  
as this Chapytre spebeth of / euermore is caused a gedred  
in this wyse / whyle the byne is in þe body / herte worketh  
in to moztynes / and that mozt body / that is to say in the byne for herte les-  
seth and waspeth away / and that that is subtyll banysshed away And than  
that / that is grosse and reuelous / that is to say thicke and ceth / the bodyth  
styll / and herte shal deth it and byenneth it And for cause a swartynes / and  
blacknes in the byne And on this wyse is blacknes caused in byne. ¶ Some  
sayth that blacknes in byne is caused on .vi. maner wyse / by cause of adu-  
sion / as I sayd dryght now And also as it is in men of Ethioppe / that are  
somme byent. ¶ Item þe second reason is by cause of moztification of kynde  
herte for than is kynde herte not of myght nor of vertue / for to colour þe blode  
as he sholde do / wherfore the blode lesseth and chaungeth his owne kynde

caused by the  
subtill part of  
the body / and  
the grosse part  
of the body /  
is not so  
subtill.

The secod  
cause.

by the  
subtill part of  
the body / and  
the grosse part  
of the body /  
is not so  
subtill.

congelation  
causes of humors  
causes of ymper  
causes of ymper

colours and turneth it to blacknes. ¶ Item. iiii. reason is by congelacyon of the blode/whan one taketh colde by the extremities of the body/ as we se other while in wynter tyme Congelacyon of blode/ is whan the blode is congeled/ that is to say/ whan þe blode is colde byten/ that is to say/ taken with colde And because thereof the bypne leseth his colour/ and maketh it wane and blacke/ and thynke/ and clumped/ and euill disposed/ what ben the extremities of the body. See in the fyrst booke the. ii. chapytre. ¶ Item the. iiii. reason is because of chaunging of the humours in the body/ as it befallith oftentymes/ as whan the blode/ or els other humours chaunged and turnyth them in to Melancolpe/ whiche Melancolpe syth it is blake of kynde/ it maketh that the bypne that cometh thereof to be blake. ¶ Item. v. reason is because of hurtynge and brusynge/ or of clemyngynge of some noble membre in the body/ that whan þe blode cometh it maketh a discoloutynge & a blacknes in the bypne. ¶ In quarto libro de febribus. sayth that noble members of þe body of man/ are the beyne and the 3 verteis of mannes body/ which for theyr nobylnes & theyr worthynes/ kind is worse other while for to meue and stette away fro them the mater of maladyes/ and of sekenesse to other members or to other places of the body. ¶ It. vi. reason is because of admixtion of some blake liquors/ or of some blake mater within the bypne/ as it falleth oftentymes/ whan sanguis Menstruus. anglice blode of the hile mater of womans sekenesse/ whiche they call her floure/ sweeteth and bypneeth and bypneeth to the Veyne/ and so to the bladder. and so effecteth the bypne/ & so cometh forth with the bypne sanguis Menstruus or Menstruum are all one. ¶ Some sayth þe blake colour of bypne is caused but of. iii. thynges/ because of aduysed/ because of mortification/ or because of admixtion of blake humours/ that is to say/ of melancolpe/ that is called Nigri humor. a blake humour/ for it is blake by way of kynde/ for it hath most kyndely of the Erth/ and most is answering to þe Element as thou hast in the fyrst booke the. iii. chapytre. And vnderstande that blake bypne hath evermore a thynges in the bypne/ or els theyr thynges And for this reason/ for blacknes is there as sweetnes and humyness and doubleness/ that is dysemperance and distorbyng of the humours/ as it is in every blake bypne. ¶ Item. ii. reason is/ blake colours in bypne/ it caused of grete cold sleping the kynde here/ or els of vnhynde here bypnyng & sleping the kynde here/ and bothe these causeth thynges in the bypne. ¶ Item. iii. reason is/ blake bypne alway/ other it sheweth colapcion/ þis is to say wastynge of the substancypall humide of the body/ that is to say/ incensyon bypnyng of the blode/ because of vnhynde here/ or it sheweth mortification/ that is to say/ extinction and fordoynge and quenchynge of kynde here though exte of colde/ or els it sheweth purgacion of the humours of melancolpe And in al these poyntes/ the body of the bypne is thynke/ or thekyr the for evermore intension of the blode/ that is to say/ bypnyng/ causeth evermore thynges in þe bypne/ by reason of collyng and waimynge of the blode about in the beyne of þe body. Also þe. iiii. reason of mortificaciō þe bypne is thynke/ because þe frigid beclappeth it & cuddeth it together. ¶ Also in purgaciō of humours melancolpe

Cōgelacyō  
of blode.

iiii. maner  
chaunging  
of humors.

The. v. ma  
ner.

Noble me  
bers of the  
body.

lyst cause.

Melancolia.

ii. reason.

iii. reason.

consumptiō  
of humors

iiii. reason



## Liber secundus.

the byrne is thicke/ by reason of the terrestre/ & is to say/ & etheries of melā  
colpe/ is myrteand menged with the byrne And for these reasons blake co-  
lour in byrne sheweth hym with a thicke/ or a thicke body. Nevertheless  
Der accidens. that is to say/ causes chaunges that befaller/ may blake  
colours in byrne shewe with a thynne body And that befaller/ when mater  
naroweth and straiteth the wayes of the byrne And the passeth and scapeth  
ther away parties that be small & subtil/ as powder or dust/ whiche small  
subtile parties/ in as moche as they are blake/ they cause blacknes in the  
byrne/ and also in as moche as they be thicke/ they thicke the byrne/ lesse  
than half thicke. ¶ Than vnderstande for a rewele/ that blake byrn moche  
in quantyte/ and with a body ineguale/ sheweth byrdng of a febz quar-  
terne whiche febz quarterne is caused thoghertesse of mirtion of melācolpe  
with a humout ouer goyng hym/ that is to say/ & byrne. when it is moche in  
quantyte/ it sheweth purgacion of & mater of Melācolpe/ and waspyng of  
the sekenesse/ that is for to say/ it is token that bynd is myghty in hym selfe/  
for to mayntene that euill distemperance/ of that humout and purge hym selfe  
therof/ for bycause of purgacion of the mater of & maladye and menyshyng  
of the sekenesse/ the byrne ought to multiply/ that is to say/ be moche in qua-  
ntyte. ¶ *Materia morbi* the mater of the sekenesse/ euermore is that humout that  
causeth the maladye ¶ Also when that the byrne is thicke inegual it sheweth  
euermore in euery maner byrne turbacion and distemperance of the humours  
in the body And also in suche parties of & byrne/ as thou seest most thychnes  
and most trublynes/ in the same parties of the body is most distemperance of  
the humours And in that place is the body most sekest And yf it be ouer all &  
body/ the sekenesse is also ouer all the body But take hede that byrne may be  
lypke/ that is to say/ thicke in. iii. maner wyse. So fyrste it is thicke/ bycause  
of noble digestio/ a that is a noble toke/ for it sheweth myght in bynd. ¶ Itē  
so fyrste the byrne is thicke/ bycause of largenes of & wayes of the byrn/ and  
& is ocher wyse/ bycause of feblenesse of bynd/ a that is yelous/ for it is toke  
that bynde is not of power in hym self for to with holde/ nor for to hepe the  
humours of the body ¶ Item so fyrste & byrne is thicke/ bycause of multitude  
and distemperance of some bykynde humours in the body But in bothe  
these. ii. laste poyntes the byrne is more thicke and more dede in colour/ the  
when it is thicke/ bycause of good digestyon And as the byrne is equale/ or  
inequale/ so is the distemperance in the body/ equale is to say/ euene ouer  
all pyles Inequall more thicke in owne place than in another. ¶ Item  
blake byrne/ be it equall/ or inequall/ and it be with a lytell body/ that is to  
say/ lytell in quantyte/ that byrne is suspecte/ for it is full perperous. ¶ Item  
byrne moche dede and byrne/ and spars/ moche to blacknesse warde/ be-  
cometh Bozification. ¶ Item this terme Bozification/ I haue expounded  
in the fyfte Chapter. ¶ Vnderstande that/ when blake byrne sheweth  
Bozification/ it is more blake/ than when it sheweth whastynge of the  
quarterne. ¶ And also thou must vnderstande/ that when blake byrne sheweth  
Bozification/ than was made bloo byrne afore that blake byrne.

where of a  
quartern is  
caused.

Water of  
p sekenes.

that byrn of  
1. prouyng distemprian  
2. laste purgacion  
3. feblenesse  
4. multitude of humours

Of what  
cause com-  
mith thych-  
nes i byrne

Equaltyas  
& inequalityas  
i byrn.

that byrn is  
qually purgacion  
when no blake  
the warde

that is for meant the byrne/that was made afor of that blacke byrne/  
 became blacke whiche was bloo afor And in this maner wyse vnderstande  
 As ofte as I saye suche byrne / or suche went beforen suche / or suche Item  
 byrne blacke and gieteryng lyke a byrne / is blacke & shynnyng / or moche  
 lyke a rauen's fether / or els lyke the face of a man of Ethiope / which because  
 of some byrnyng are blacke in the face / sheweth adustion complet And that  
 was the byrne grene afor. Item byrne blacke & thynne abouen and thyn-  
 ne downwarde with a foule swarte resydence in the bothum after that  
 byrne hath his kynde resydence. If it be of a woman it sheweth putgeryon  
 of bys floures If suche byrne be of a man / it is not fully so swart / nor the re-  
 sydence in the bothum / is not fully so blacke / as when it is of a woman Cha  
 it sheweth / as I sayd in the fyrste reule / wastyrng / of a quartene / or els of a  
 febre / that hath some spice of a quartene / hauyng no redarge to the quantite  
 of the byrne / as I sayd. Understode that this reule Resydence is taken in  
 ii. maner wyse in thislike And as I myghte be / in this forsayd reule Som  
 tyme for kynde resyng in the vessell after it is made As I taught in p. fyrst  
 boke / the .iii. chapptre And also it is taken for every maner of thyck mater in  
 the byrne that byrth with downe to the bothum in the byrnall / that we call  
 drestes the grounde fopos. Item blacke byrne and fatte abouen / as foppes  
 made with oyle / and with an puell sauour at the nose / hauyng no passyon in  
 the bladder / nor in the reynes / pf it be in a soue it sheweth deth. Fathenest  
 enermore sheweth wastyrng and meltynge away of kynde Seynche also  
 sheweth rotynge and forboyng of the kynde Of fathenest and of fetoures /  
 se in p. iii. boke in the .ii. chapptre. If it hath no sauour / but as byrn  
 sholde haue / ther is helpe. If he haue therewith a passyon on the reynes / hope  
 there is of mendynge Also that byrn that groweth a fetoure too a man's nose  
 fere of or it be put to the nose / it sheweth deth. Understode by blacke byrn  
 here / not onely that byrn that is blacke ouer all / or blackyshe But also that  
 byrne that hath in hym / as it were a blacke sap / a swartyshe cloude / & mak-  
 eth the byrne to seme blacke / or blackyshe / and also for byrne that is rubi-  
 cunda & purpure & inopos & hyanos That is moche inquanty / it sheweth  
 the kynde is of myght and powre to helpe hym self And for to putge & mated  
 of the febenest And byrncypally the byrne shewe hym moche in die cretica  
 in the day of correption / what is in the world mater of the febenest. I haue  
 sayd when the cloude is hangyng in the myddes / it sheweth in the world is ob-  
 diaunt too kynde / and that the febenest is made at le and dysposed for too  
 be ouercomen & ouer maynted by kynde. What is an aue I sayd / yea may  
 more therof is wher I spoke of febre. What febre / I good tokenneth in the Good for  
 ben that sheweth in bynde And that is the moste lygne of correption of his in the  
 the febenest / that may be in a soue man Good mynde / & amable hope / appe-  
 tye to some mate / or fode not auctraghly byth / shynnyng of niles & man-  
 ly of shynnyng thynge / lyghenest in the body / that is to saye / pf he maye  
 be and byrth hym selfe / and toyme hym selfe Good tokenneth in the face  
 in lippes / in the nose / and about the temples. Egeyon pf it be upon p. quatt  
 C. ii.

a blacke byrne  
 about to a febre  
 of the byrne  
 purgation of floures  
 in a soue  
 of a febre  
 Resydes in  
 byrne.

think  
 blacke & fully byrn  
 about after the  
 of the bladder  
 which deth.

the febenest  
 many.

what is  
 black byrn

Good for  
 be man,



## Liber secundus.

type of his indigestyon / & not blache in colour / nor swarte / but more tawny  
 citrine in colour / and yf it synche soule Egestyon is shryng / Ingestyon  
**Egestyon** is etyng And digestyon is desyng / as this verse sayd *Qui bene digerit Ingerit Ege*  
**Ingestyon** *rit est bene sumit.* anglice / he that well eteth despeth and shrytch he is hole to be.  
**Digestyon** ther he goo o2 sytte / sweet over all the body hote / o2 colde But better is hote  
 o2 els hote sweete in the hede alone But colde sweete in the hede alone is  
 peryllous & Isaak techeth in p. llii. chappre de febribus. If he fele in hym  
 selfe any mendment / after the sweete / o2 els that the febr is abate and swage  
 therwith / than it is good robyn. ¶ Also yf he thynke his Egestyon do hym  
 good / nooble tokne Bledynge at the nose in die ceticio And it be not in ex-  
 cels / but as hynde may goodly suffice a bete And namely yf he fele any men-  
 dyng o2 any lyghenes in hym ther after. ¶ Spatyng whete in colour and  
 hongyng well togyder And yf he may deluyet hym well therof at oones o2  
 euyl signes twyes o2 thryes at the mooste / it is a good sygne. ¶ *Galena signa* / euyl toknes  
 i a seke mā in sykenes be these / yf the eyeliddes wer bloo and his nose lene and sharpe  
 and thynne and wzyng together and the nose thrylles narow and goon to  
 gyder / and the ende of the nose colde and the brywis falleth / yf his tetes of  
 water come out at his eyen agayne his wyll If that one eye were lesse than  
 that other If his eyen war holow derke and dymme / and gassely lokinge /  
 al these are tokens of deth. ¶ And take good hede p thogh therbe moore euyl to-  
 kens than good in a syke man / yet he may recouet / & thogh there spere moore  
 good tokens than euyl / yet is ther no suryns of amforyng For ther is moore  
 dyede of lunc one euyl sygne / than helpe in. v. o2 vi. good sygnes and so con-  
 trario And pynceppally in myghtes of hynde. ¶ And therfore thou muste ta-  
 ke hede of the goodnesse and of the euynesse of the sygnes / and not onely of  
 the nombre of them. ¶ For Galienus sayth upon *Procras Empidus* That  
**Galienus.** thogh a seke body make blache vyne in the begynnyng of his sekenesse / and  
 after also / with dyedefull tokens it not withstanding he may shape it If p  
 the person haue myght of hynde. ¶ Item Galienus sayth / when fyrst in the  
 begynnyng of his sekenesse come a blache vyne / & thogh it last so many daies  
 and ther come afterwards a whete vyne / with a whete *Prostasis* / than yf  
 it be so p he haue within hym strength of hynde it sheweth lessyng & woffyng  
 of p sekenesse. ¶ Speke well these .ii. articles that Galienus techeth by blak  
 colours as I sayd in p npt rowle afore these .ii. ¶ This word *Prostasis* is  
**Prostasis** somtyme take in specyall / and somtyme in generall / when it is taken in spe-  
 is somtym cyall / it is onely in the grounde and in the bothum of p vyne / & alway whē  
 taken specy it is so it is properly *Prostasis*. But when it is in the myddes of the vyne it  
 all / & so it is properly called *Encosmia*. When it is aboue / that is to say / in the ouer par-  
 me general tye of the vyne / it is called *Prostasis*. & when it is  
 taken generally / be it in the grounde be it in the myddes be it aboue it is called  
*Prostasis* properly / improperly / when it is in the ouer part of the vyne.  
 But be it properly / or improperly it is euermore in the vyne / moost lyke a  
 robe / a mylie / a clowde / o2 a skye. And vnderstande that the byge that *Pro-*  
*stasis* holde hym in the vyne / the moore bentofre it sheweth in the body

Of dyminne bypnythe cause of yre in a lente febre theweth straguria. Straguria is other callid of þe bladder. .i. li. ca. iiii. v. conditione. A lente febre maketh one lene & fyne & feble/ and whan one hath it comly he wandzeth thereis.

Explicit secundum capitulum de nigro colore. Incipit tertium capitulum de liuido colore.

**B**loo coloure is moſte bytweene whyte coloure and blacke/ haupnge in what moze of blacke coloure than of whyte/ by eſtymacyon And therfore all auctours tete therof moſte after blacke coloure/ for as moche as it moſte accordeth to black/ þe body of bloo bypne is natural whyte/ bycauſe of admixtion of partys that ben terreſtre/ that is to ſay earthyſſe/ with other partys that ben wateryſſe is the blackneſſe/ or els þe bloones cauſed/ for thoſe ptes þe ben terreſtre naturally be blackyſſe/ & this is bloo coloure in bypne cauſed of blacke coloure and whyte coloure But moſte partys all auctours reſcheyth that bloodneſſe in bypne is cauſed in. v. maner wyſes. As bycauſe of ptebacyon of the humours in the body/ as it is in þe wom. be. flux/ for in every flux/ fleume by reaſon of his liquidityte/ that is to ſay/ of his impleyngnes/ & his neſſhenes/ he mengeth and impleth hym ſelfe & by reaſon therof he iſeuermoze pynceyppall medioure and inſtrumente in every flux/ and whan he regneth & floweth aboute in þe body/ than are þe humours all diſturbled and diſtempered in the body/ & in þe bypne/ and bycauſe there of is genyzed a maner of bloodheade in the bypne/ þe is to ſay/ a ſwarthneſſe & dyminneſſe/ ſomdele to blackneſſe warde. ¶ Item. ii. reaſons bycauſe of flux & humours/ as in ſerwme. In ſerwme the humours are dyſturbled & the humours are infecte/ þe is to ſay/ dyminned & dulled and all dyminayed And ſo the bypne taketh a maner of bloodneſſe/ for as moche as the humours in þe body/ haue loſt theyr kynde bypgheneſſe/ or els haue not all theyr bypgheneſſe/ as they ſholde haue kyndely. ¶ Item. iii. reaſon iſ cauſe of defaulte of þe. ii. digeſtyon/ as it is in Apoſtall. For whan ſpar is diſſepered/ by reaſon of frigidyte/ the bloode is not depured/ nor defyed/ nor hath he not his kynd nuryſhyng as he ſholde haue And therfore the bloode cometh to the bypne and to other membyres of the body But take hede for as moche as it hath not his kyndely nuryſhyng in ſpar/ as he ſhold haue hadde/ he is not of kynd nor of myght for to nuryſhe & fede þe membyres & the ptes of the body ¶ he membyres & the ptes of the body taketh to them of the bloode/ all þe able & couenyant to them/ & anſweryng to theyr kynde/ & the remenaſt/ reſogeth & theweth/ & ſendeth it as gayne to ſpar And than for as moche as it is impure & crude & dyminne in colour/ it cauſeth ſuche colour in þe bypne/ & in this wyſe/ is the colde ydyopſye engedged. & ho many ſpices of ydyopſye ther be & which they are. ſe in þe. iiii. chapytre de albo colore. Of the hote ydyopſye. ſe in the. i. chapytre. de ruſo colore. ¶ If bnyd hote wygeth & kynd hote quycheth & ſo doth þe kynd hote & bytweeth out fro þe kynd hote thoſe ptes þe be moſt ſupyle & ptes þe made þe humours ligher bypghen/ & ſo bycauſe therof þe bypne is dimpleſſe & blopyſſe/ as it ſareth by kynd and bnynde hote in the body of man/ & as it doth by ſyre & water/ moche ſyre quencheth ſyll water/ and moche water quencheth lytel ſyre Kyght ſo it iſ bytweene kynde hote and bnynde hote in mannes body/

Bloo bypne

Bloo bypne is cauſed. v. maner wyſes.

Generacyon of the flux

byndyng colour. þe humours

Generacyon of ydyopſye



## Liber secundus.

**Of þe veynes in mans body.** Understande that all the veynes of the body of man begynne at the liver as all the synowes of the body begynne at the hede in the harte. In the nether parties of the liver begynne the veyne that is called *Vena ramosa* the braunche veyne and that for dyvers causes for fro hym issued beeth all other veynes. This *Vena ramosa* is also called *Lactea porta* or *porta lactis* mylike gate for it taketh and receiveth fro the stomake a mater as whete as mylike whiche whete mater is called *Cisamaria* the Cisamarye be. bill. veyne that be miseraice whiche I spake of in the fyrst booke the iii. chapitre. *Lactea porta* is also called that same reppel þat same gutte that is called *Longacio* therin is *Alpyth* & than it is called so þat is to say mylike gate for it is most whete of all the guttes in the body or els it is called mylike gate *Ider contrarium* by the contrarie for of mylike is he nought. All the fytche of þe wombe goth thow out hym at þe saile ende Also *Lactea porta* is another thyng as I sayd. i. li. iii. ca. Item the forsayd braunche veyne is called *Arteria magna* the grette arterie for as moche as he is the grette of all the arteries and fro hym cometh all other arteries And also bycause that by hym pyncypally cometh kynde moisture and refresshyng to all þe arteries. Arteries properly be the veynes by the whiche the spirituall nethers draweth to them aye and there spicites by pores of the lunges And therfore Arteries are as moche for to say as *arteria* or *arteria* that is to say drawing aye. This *Vena ramosa* is deuyded in to .v. veynes whiche .v. veynes deuydeth them in to dyvers parties of the liver And one of the .v. veynes gothe to the rygge bone and there be deuydeth hym in to a stolke that are tyed to the rygge bone Of the whiche I spake in the fyrst booke the .v. ca. Then of these veynes *Capillares* cometh oute one that is called *hilus* the hyle And it is sayd of this worde of grette hilos. i. *lucus* use for that veyne *Capillares* that are tyed to þe rygge bone beeth the *hyle* þat is to say the veyne fro the liver in to the reynes As I sayd in. i. lib. ii. ca. Tha fro him spredeth many veynes about in þe limes in dyvers parties of the hyppes to þe thres leggis fete and toes of the whiche one goth in to the fete under the hachyll And ther on is good bledyng agayne ne scheneth of the reynes & of the bladder & the mater & agayne apostumes and boches And it is called *Sophina* the Sophyna. Also fro *Vena ramosa* cometh veynes that are called *Utrichides* or els *Utrichides* post Of whiche I sayd p. i. li. ii. ca. Also fro *Vena ramosa* cometh certayne veynes that are called *Emoroids* or *Emoroides* of this *Em* or *Em* that is to say sanguis blo de And of this worde *Em* that is to say flowe the flure for by the veynes and in the veynes may men have the flure of bloode with sharpe huge pynes that is called in englyshe the *Emoroides* this terme *Emoroides* *Emoroides* de are taken both for the veynes and the scheneth also. Understande þat men have they purgacyon by the *Emoroides* as women by they flowes And howe many types be there of. As in the thyrde booke viii. Chapter Item fro *Vena ramosa* cometh many small veynes þat is to say mony small veynes & cometh all to one in to the backe of þe liver & that is called *Vena cava* the holowe veyne for he is whete & holowe & he is anon deuyded in to

ii. braunches and that one braunche/as Galene sayd goth vp to the myddes  
of Diaphragma and entereth in to the left syde of the hert / & of that arterie Arteris  
cometh all the other arteris and veynes that goth bpwarde in the body to  
throte/the necke/the hede/the armes/handes and fyngers of Diaphragma /  
se in the. vii. chapptre. De colore Karopos. Then by this arterie, this braunche  
cometh bp thus to the herte / is p herte tped & knytte to p lungis / by p whiche  
the herte is ayzed & refresshed / is to saye coled & tepred & this Arterie / thus at  
p hert is called Adortus adort. Adortus that is to saye ad cor ortus. anglice springing  
at p herte & sco hym cometh all other Arteris that goth bpwarde in to the  
body & o at the hert he deuideth hym in. ii. braunches. One goth fro the lungis  
and fro the lungis forth to p ryght hande / not euen streyght but crooked The  
seconde braunche goth euen streyght to the left hande And that is the reason  
whyte it is moze certayne to Judge by the pulse of the left werst / than by the  
ryght werst That veyne that cometh fro the lungis too the ryght hande As  
I sayde whan he cometh to the ryght Mulder / there he is deuyded lyke a cro-  
ketz forke And his owne braunche goth to the hede And the other to p ryght  
syde / as I sayd And that is called Vena Cephalica the hede veyne. ¶ Bledynge  
in that veyne is helprunge agayne the Cephalargre / that is to saye / sekenesses  
in the hede And also agayne the fallynge eyell And passions of the eyen and  
holynge of the eyen / and bloode fallynge in to the eyen Cephalargre is ta-  
ken for every maner malady in the hede comynge fro the inner partes / and  
suche other ¶ Under Vena Cephalica / lyeth another veyne that is called me-  
diana / the mydde veyne / blood laryng in this veyne is agayne Dysma & Asma  
Osmia & Peripulmonia. And pyncypally agayne all passions of the spyrituall  
membres. ¶ Ryght vnder this veyne / is to saye / vnder p mydde veyne / is  
another veyne that is called Vena Epatica the lyuer veyne And also it is called  
Vena Basilica the base veyne / and minucion that is to saye / bloodlast on this vey-  
ne is pyncypally agayne sekenesse of the stomake and agayne pleuresye and  
agayne sekenesse of the fluxoryes / & sekenesses of the lyuer. ¶ Fro vena  
concaua cometh veynes to the stomake / and fro the stomake cometh certayne  
veynes bp by the brest / and in to the throte / and seuereth to the voyce And are  
called febre / the febrys Petra. is as bibra bi / that is to saye / w strenght be-  
winge out w myght / for vpon that the febrys be large stroung and myghty  
so is the voyce. ¶ Item vnder the base veyne is another veyne that cometh  
fro the splen / and goth to the lytell fynger And bledynge on a veyne meny-  
shed and fordoth the sekenesse of the splen / a moche abateth humours of de-  
lancolye / a moche lyghteth man / and therfore it is called Vena splenatica the  
splen veyne And ryght as these. iiii. forsayd veynes be in the one arme of ma  
is to saye / p hede veyne / the spwall veyne / o else the mydde veyne / the lyuer  
veyne / and splen veyne Ryght so it is in that other arme of man / & this for-  
sayd vena splenatica cometh in to the lytell fynger / and a lytell aboue the ly-  
tell fynger is blode larynge on that same veyne for that same sekenesse.  
¶ Item in womē is a veyne that is called Kyntia. And this begynneth as all  
other dooth / and deuydeth hym in co. ii. braunches / that one goth to the left

when the  
pulse of the  
lyfte werst  
is moze cer-  
taine than  
the ryght  
werst. for that  
the ryght  
wyll goth  
The hede  
veyne.  
seruilly to it.  
but in the right  
hand it is not.  
Mediana  
and agayne  
passions of  
the body  
Vena bas-  
lica. 3<sup>rd</sup> line  
wayn

The splen  
veyne. 3<sup>rd</sup> line  
by the 3<sup>rd</sup> finger



## Liber secundus.

lyde / and that other to the ryght lyde And eyther ben drayped in to dyuers  
 byanches / some go to the matrice / becyng with hym blode / to nuryshyng  
 and fedyng of the matrice / and also for to gendze the floutes / and the reme-  
 naunte of the byanches goth to the pappes / becyng with hym of the same  
 blode / for to make it whyte / and conne it in to mylke / & to the fode of Chyl-  
 dre. ¶ And as all veynes begynneth at the lyuer Ryght so all synewes be-  
 gynneth at þe Cerebze / that is to saye / in the byarne of the hede And all the  
 bones of the hede parne .xviii. cometh .iii. fenowes fro the byarnes in to the  
 fourmer parte of the hede And anone deuiderh hym in to the myddell of the  
 forhede in to .ii. that one goth to the ryght eye / and that other to the left eye /  
 and eyther of them is called Opticus. or eis Venaufibilis. Opticus is the veyne /  
 or the fenowe of the syght / for by them are the spyrtes and the my htes of þe  
 syght bare fro the Cerebze to the eyen for to cause and geue syght. ¶ The  
 other .ii. fenowes cometh fro the same party of þe Cerebze / but moze outward  
 that is to saye / at the endes of the forhede / and goth to the Eys becyng also  
 with hym spyrtes and myght / for to founte the becyng And therfore they  
 are called Nervi oculibiles the fenowes of becyng. ¶ It is called also Posticus for  
 they begynne behynde and go backwarde. ¶ Item they are called Offa Petroſa  
 stone bones / or eis Nervi Petroſi fenowe ſtone / for there hardnes. ¶ Item they  
 are woundze hard by way of kynde / that they may be ſuretyen and bere the bet-  
 ter ſtroke / and the becyng may be the moze better for þe moze harde and the  
 moze ſadde a thyng is the better it ſownderh / as a bell doth that is of ſadde  
 metall ſownderh better than yf it were of lede. ¶ Item fro the ſame party of  
 the Cerebze / cometh .ii. veynes to the geyſhell of the noſe And they are called  
 Nervi odorabiles the ſmellyng fenowes. Other .ii. veynes go to the tongue and  
 they be called Nervi guſtabiles the fenowes of taſtynge. ¶ Other .ii. veynes also  
 cometh fro the ſame parte of the Cerebze / of the whiche one of them clyeth on  
 the ryght parte / and goth to þe ryght ſhulder / and ther he is crochyd And  
 his one ende paſſeth to the ryght hand / and that other to the ryght fore / but  
 not withſtandynge they bothe are deuiderd in to .v. byanches / and eury of  
 thoſe .v. goth to the .v. fyngetes. On the ſame wyſe his ſelawe that clyeth on  
 the left half paſſeth to the left ſhulder / and ryght ſoft is crochyd in the left  
 ſhulder and ſo goth forth as to that other doth in þe ryght ſhulder And theſe  
 are called Nervi tangibiles the ſelyng fenowes For in them and by them and by  
 the byanches as cometh of them / is the touchyng and ſelyng in man ppy-  
 cally in the handis and in the feet ¶ And all theſe forſayd fenowes in ma-  
 nes body are called Nervi ſenſibiles the fenowes of wytte & of ſelyng For they  
 are as it were the Inſtrumentes of mannes wyttis and ſelynges / all other  
 fenowes in man are called Nervi motuſi fenowes moouyng and ſecyng  
 of eury man / or beest that bereth lyfe And fenowes motuſi begynneth at  
 the Cerebze in the battell that is to ſaye / in the hynder parte of the hede /  
 as the other begynneth before / as I ſayd But ſome begynne at the battell  
 immediate. This .ii. ſerues mediate & immediate. I ſhew in the fyrſt boke .ii.  
 Chappere. The fenowes begynneth in the battell Immediate that ceceth

the veynes  
of the lyuer

þe veynes of  
þe ſyght.

fenowes of  
becyng.  
Stone bones

Fenowes  
of ſmelling

Fenowes  
of taſtynge

Fenowes  
of ſelyng

to pntre place is to pntre pntre whichereth the pntreth to pntre  
 most place of the body by meane of the Mica the pntre is pntre of pntre pntre  
 bone and begynneth in the hynde partre of the hynde behynde a lasteth  
 downe too the laste ende of the backe whete as myke and wrapped in.ii.  
 thynne skynes which be of pntre. *Plamater or Duramater.* And by these.ii.  
 thynne skynes is pntre defended and kept fro the hardnes and hurtynge of  
 the popites of pntre bone. What are *Plamater or Duramater.* it telleth in ward  
 vii. chapter De coloris corporis. The rygge bone is of .xviij. popites. vi. be at  
 counted for the necke and .xii. for the backe these .xii. popites be called upon bone.  
 Dila Dola the spondylis of the backe spondylis popites all is one / than by  
 twene spondylis of pntre backe xlv. ii. senowes which senowes go downe  
 and make the herde And the herde is the ende of the senowes for in hym is  
 all the senowes endes for manes herde as who sayth is notyng but senowes  
 In women these .ii. senowes go to the over mouth of the matrice And ther  
 with somtyme the mouth of the matrice speeth hym and somtyme openeth  
 hym for to receyue the seide and hynde of manes generacyon. Item  
 fro the pntre partre of the bede cometh .ii. senowes / that goth to the over  
 Jawe and than fro that to the nether Jawe and the reflecteth pntre is to say  
 boweth agayne to the over Jawe And this is pntre reason why the nether Jawe  
 moeueth the over not. Also there come two senowes which goeth to the  
 tonge and by the mouth the fode whan one eteth. Item other two senowes  
 come fro them and go to the lunges / and reflecteth agayne to pntre tonge. The senowes  
 And they are called *Nervi Vocales* the senowes of speche for upon the disposicio  
 of them is the soundynge of manes speche in the tonge for some of these be the  
 over large And than may be not well soundeth pntre letter S And this senowe  
 is called *Preidius* the pntre / or is the wofpntre *Preidius* also is he pntre wofpntre  
 And it oweth to be wofpntre *Preidius* and somtyme these senowes ende in pntre  
 dest of the tonge / and than he may not well bynge forth this letter S and  
 ther by also other of these senowes called *stancus* pntre stance or els pntre stancus  
 and stancus is he that stanceth And therof cometh stancate stancynge as  
 pntre is for to wofpntre By these fofpntre thynge it semeth well pntre arterie  
 be bypntre for every arterie is a bypntre a not concentratio for vena is as moche  
 for to say as vena the way of bloode Of this wayde vis a waye And of this  
 wayde vena or vena bloode for the bypntre are the wayes and the places of  
 bloode. Or els vena is as who saye vena that is to say vena lungis pntre the bypntre  
 sell of bloode for the bloode is contained in pntre bypntre as lygnour is in a vessel he pntre  
 And therefore in pntre the bypntre are called the wayes of bloode. The fofpntre  
 sayd pipes of the lunges are called *Fistule pulmonis* or *Conduculum* anglice the  
 lunge pntre Pulmo I sayd is the lunge of a beest for in. vii. chapter De co  
 lore corporis *Fistula* canalis is a pntre In these pntre of pntre because  
 of supfl humours and schenelles other while gadeth foule matter which  
 causeth a malady that is called *asfugum* and somtyme it is without pntre  
 and than it causeth a malady that is called *asfugum* And somtyme a schenelle pntre  
 is called *Alma* and somtyme both within and without and than it causeth *Alma*



## Liber secundus.

a sickness that is called *Decomia*. All these .iiii. maladies are sicknesses on  
 the lungis. Than for to knowe these .iiii. for sayd spices of sicknesses on the  
 lungis. Take hede that *sanctum* is whan the bryth is large inwarde  
 and streyght outwarde. *Disma* is whan the bryth is streyght inwarde / and  
 harde for to perceyue to the mennes berynge. *Asma* is whan it is streyght  
 outwarde / and easy for to here / for whan one hath *Asma* he coteleth an d  
 cokleth in his brythynge. *Decomia* is whan it is bothe *Disma* and *Asma* / so  
 that both *Asmaticus* & *Decomicus* maketh coteleth in the brythynge / yea  
 a noyse whā one symtech. ii. straws / one to y other. *Decomicus* singeth a  
*dismaticus* be they y have y sickness *pulmonie* also. But thogh blode in *byrne*  
 be caused in. v. maners / as I sayd / as nygh as al auctours teche. *Genet*  
 thele *Gilbertus* sayth expressely / y it is caused but one wyse / as whā. ii. be-  
 cometh togyder / of whiche that one is byght and clere / and that other shā  
 dowyng and dymyng & dethyng. If the dethenelle of that one be more than  
 the byghenelle of that other / one is mynyshed / that is to saye / lesse bycause  
 of pelyence of that other. And so is caused a maner of dymnes / whiche is most  
 towarde bloones. An example he gyveth by a styche / whan it begynneth to  
 byenne. Also an example by a candell whan one lyghteth it. And also by an  
 example of the Raynbowe / whiche raynbowe is nothing but a reflectyon of  
 lyght in a holow clowde. I passe over bycause of prolixite. And therfore as  
 he sayth blodnes in *byrne* is a shadowyng and a dymyng outcomynge / and  
 outcomynge the spirytues / and the kynde heat / and the humours / and so on  
 causeth dymnes and bloones / and blacknes be alone in significacion. For a  
 blacke is moze perelous than bloo. Item understande that there is two  
 maner bloones in *byrne*. Somtyme the *byrne* is bloo / as it were a draft with  
 a plumb of lede / in a poppe / or in a parchmyne lefe. And such maner bloo-  
 nes sheweth mortification. And somtyme it is as it were a maner of dymne  
 moche shadowyng towarde blacknes / and such maner bloones sheweth some  
 tyme mortification / and somtyme adustyon. And this shal thou knowe doba  
 it sheweth that one / and whan it sheweth that other. If it be so that there  
 be in the *byrne* a maner of greennes / or els yf the *byrne* also / that *byrne* a-  
 ppeareth with a maner a greennes / it sheweth adustyon / yf no greennes mozt  
 bloones in *carpon*. Item take hede that bloones in *byrne* is somtyme total / and  
 somtyme particular. If the bloones be total / that is to saye / over all / olo-  
 ryme total it sheweth one of these poyntes / other it sheweth mortification of the bloode  
 somtyme of the lyue. Or els it sheweth mortification bothe of the bloode / and  
 also of the lyue. But whan that one / and whan that other / thus shal I thou  
 knowe late the *byrne* have his resydence. And if it sheweth withoute bloo-  
 nes / it sheweth mortification of the bloode / but not of the lyue. If it be so  
 that the *byrne* byn affect that be hath his resydence shewe hym bloo / it sheweth  
 mortification of bothe / that is to saye / of the bloode / and of the lyue  
 also. Item understande that whan the *byrne* is but particulare bloo / that  
 is to saye / bloo but in some place there of / is that is encreased above / that is  
 to saye / in the best party of the *byrne* / or els from yddes of *byrne* shewe

Sanctum  
 Disma.  
 Asma.

Gilbertus  
 sayth.

the how as a  
 reflection of light  
 in a hollow cloud.

and so

to be

two ma-

ner of blo-

nes in by-

ne.

the how

the how

the how

the how

the how

the how

the how

the how

the how

the how

the how

the how

the how

the how

Bozification And this is the Philosophie or reason for the spūs that be  
sent out with the hyne cometh vmbred/berked/and dymmed/ because of  
mynnyshing and lessing of kynde hete in the body/ for the proprete & vertue  
of kynde hete of 3 spūs are byawen vpwārd kyndely And therfore througħ  
the workyng of them/ the bones holdeth bym aboue in the hyne And there  
fore euery maner bones in the hyne betokeneth Bozification/ as it befall  
eth comenly in the Emptreyes. In Emptreye is as moche for to say as a manged  
febre And therfore take hede that ther be. iij. Emptreyes The lest The more  
and the myddell. The lest Emptreye is a febre that is compoude of a febre  
cotidian continuall/ and of a febre tertian interpolare. The more Em-  
ptreye is a febre compoude of a febre quartayn cotynuall/ and of a febre ter-  
cyan interpolate. The myddell Emptreye is compoude of a tertyan con-  
tinuall/ and of a cotidian interpolate *Febris cotidiana*. A febre Cotidian/ is he  
that tormenteth euery daye. *Febris continua*. A continuall febre/ is he that tur-  
menteth continually and cesseth neuer/ till he parre other to lye/ or to deth.  
*Febris tertiana*. Is he that tormenteth euery. iij. day/ that is to say/ the fyrst daye  
of accesse is one/ the seconde is the nyght day after And. iij. day is that day  
he is taken agayne And this maner febre tertyan/ is called simpler tertiana  
A symple tertyan/ for in a symple tertyan he hath but one day reste bytween  
ii. accesles/ that is to say/ bytween. ii. like dayes. Of the febre tertyan be  
dyuers species/ as *Tertiana uera*. A uere tertyan. *Et tertiana non uera*. A fals tertyan.  
*Tertiana naturalis*. *Et Tertiana non naturalis*. *Duplex tertiana* *Et duo Tertiana*. *De Tertiana uera* Is  
that/ that leseth but. vii. accesles/ that is to saye. vii. passyons/ Is *Spocas*  
betwixt *Tertiana uera* & *fals*. *Legeth. ii. of. xi. accesles/ or els mo.* Item *Tertiana na-*  
*turalis*. a duble tertyan is that/ that tormenteth euery daye/ but stronger/ that  
is to saye/ more than. iij. to the. iii. daye/ to the. iii. daye Item *Duo tertiana* hath  
the fyrst day of accesse/ that is to say/ of cessunge bytweene/ as a sym-  
ple tertyan hath but. ii. accesles. ii. that is to saye/ it hath. ii. accesles/ or  
tyres on the. iii. daye. *Item interpolata*. A febre interpolate/ is on. iij. maner  
wyse/ one is called *simple interpolate*. A symple interpolate/ that turmen-  
teth but ones in the daye. *Et duo interpolata*/ or *duplex interpolate*/ thyres on  
the daye *Et tria interpolata*/ or *triplex interpolate*/ a triple interpolate hath  
iii. on the daye. *Item quartana* The febre quartayne is also in many maner  
wyse/ as a symple quartana. *Quartana uera* *Quartana non uera* *Bina quat-*  
*tana* *Duplex quartana* & *Duo quartana*. *Febris quartana simplex quarta-*  
*na non uera* is all the/ for that tormenteth euery daye and. xliiij. houres lon-  
ge bytweene/ as a febre quartayne interpolate/ as a symple tertyan hath one  
daye bytweene. *Quartana non uera* a fals quartayne is that/ that turmen-  
teth bytweene of less than. xliiij. houres *Bina quartana* a duplex quartana is  
that/ that tormenteth the. iij. daye/ and the. ii. daye/ after the. iij. daye. *Duo quat-*  
*tana* a duo quartayne hath two accesles in the. iij. daye/ as a duo tertyan  
hath two accesles in the. iij. daye. Item there is a maner of febre that  
is called *Epialis*. *Epialis* Is sayde of this *Epi*/ that is to saye/ aboue/ And  
of this wyse *Algor* holde for *Epialis* Is the colde febre/ he is calde aboue/

Ther be. iij.  
Emptreyes

A dayle fe-  
uer.

A feuer ter-  
cyan.

Tertiana  
beta Terti-  
ciana non  
beta Terci-  
ana *Natu-*  
*ralis*.

Duo tertia-  
na:

Feuer ite-  
polate.

A feuer  
quartayn.



## Liber secundus.

wherof is withoute the body/and hote within the body And this feuer is caused all a colde fe. waye of stowme and Melancolye gross and corrupte/and gadzed in the stow-  
uer caused. make for whan euell humours be gadzed in to spish and corruption in p sto-

make/ than there is resoluech fro them/that is to saye/there cometh of them a maner sumolyte/that greutth and distempereth the herte/ and so is there caused an unkynde hete within the body And than some of that sumolyte  
syngeth out and bysseth out to the vnter places of the body/and there it dys- fundeth and dysperleth the stowme vnter/that is vnder the skynne whiche  
causeth colde/and so are the vnter parties of the body colde. ¶ There is ano-

**Febbris lip-  
paria,**

ther feuer that is called Lipparia p hote feuer/ but not that that we call the byennynge feuer. This Lipparia is caused of colde corrupte vnder p  
skynne/wherof is resolued a fume/whiche cometh to the herte And there cau- seth a distemperance of hete And than that colde that is so distempered/ diffu-  
deth and bylateth hym by the vnter parties of the body/and causeth unkynde hete in them/that is to saye/ in thos parties And than some of that fume is  
drawen inwarde in to the inner parties of the body/and there he diffan- dyth the stowme vnter that he syngeth there/ because of diffu-  
lynge of that stowme is caused a unkynde colde in p inner parties of the bo- dy. And this two feuers/that is to saye/ Epiala & Lipparia/are feuers inter-

polat. ¶ Item there is a feuer that is called Effumera/ & Effumeryn. And this is the moste lyght and easie feuer that is for the same daye that he cometh p  
same day he goth And therefore it becometh the name of a wayme that is called Effumera/ the whiche wayme the same daye it groweth/ the same daye it  
dyeth. Some saye it is sayde of that wayde of growe Effumeten/that is to saye symple and swete. For this feuer is of a matre/that is swete and subyll  
that is to saye of the spys For the spys he hat a lytel fyrtyed and fadyd

**Feuer coti-  
die,**

therwith/and so anone it passeth away. ¶ Fever cotidiall cometh of cor-  
rupte stowme in the vesselles of the blode. ¶ What for the vesselles of blode  
I haue layd And this feuer is knowne by continual lyth in the body/that  
hete is fyrst soft And also it is knowen by a greuous disorder of the bowels/  
Also by rednesse of the eyes/ & blooming in the face/ & his colour is lyke albes  
and he saueret nothing in the mooueth/ his helpe is bloomy and also it is kno-  
wen by a stonyng and mayling of his hande and of his fettes For grete a-  
Ronyng in the feure/ is bene taken that stowme is cause there of If he speke  
moche in the feuer/ it is taken that colde is cause there of If he be lyth in the

**Feuer terri-  
an,**

feuer/ it is cause of Melancolye. ¶ Febre terrena. It cometh of corrupte colde  
in the vessels/and that thou mayst knowe by greuous lyth in the body/ by muche  
waayng/and dasyng in the eyes/and by greuous heurne/and colde eyes/and  
now hote/and now colde dysmoweth/and now in the poynte blacke songs  
because of byennynge of unkynde hete/and also because of greuous shynge of p herte

**Feuer quar-  
tayne,**

Febreis quartana cometh of corrupte melancolye in p vessels/this is comenly  
p maner therof. In p fyrst begynnyng p lyppe watche dade/whan  
cometh a maner byrness/ & shaknes/after p cometh grete colde/after p qu-  
byng a ryng on the body/ & all so byth/and at p lyppe watche a lyppe

with lytell sweet or none. ¶ And take this for a rebule that there owerth no  
medycyn to be gyven in the quartayne before. ¶ And there owerth  
no stronge medycyn to be gyven to hym þat hath the first quartayne. ¶ The  
understande þat vpon bloo with a lytell body / is a maner of factyns about  
lyke gerte / or owerth with a rebule / is the rebule a rebule flure / or els a flure  
of the quartenayen save in the flur the byrn is more bloo like. ¶ Understande  
here that what an I speke of blones I speke of all maner of dethnes & byrn-  
me made according toward blones / as I sayde in this forsayde chapytre.  
¶ That the byrne is bloo / is because that in every rebule. Flure the humours in  
the body are distempred and distourbled and cannot be byrled together in þe  
rebule / is to say / in the byrnes in the body medlyng the fletome and the  
other humours together. For fletome is alway principall humour and insty-  
ment of a flure. And so under byrn all they cause a grender rebule and colour in þe  
byrn. Where the byrne is lytell / is because that all the morours in the body  
cannot and cannot in to the guttes where the byrne is greye and fatte / is  
because that the myght of hende melteth and wasteth more. Where it is  
thick and rebule like / is because that the humours in the body are all  
distempred and distourbled. And that all þe Terrestiall and Aquaticall of the  
humours in the body be myxt together / and so is the rebule caused.  
¶ Item byrne monyde lytell in quantyte / and bloo / and fatte about the  
mouth deth. And namely / yf there come an Ague upon hym therewith / wha-  
te it is wonder lytell / is because that the rebule of the byrne / that is to say / the  
tongues of the byrne / are letted and stopeth / so that the byrne maye not ha-  
ve his full cours oute as he shoulde have. Where the byrne is bloo / is because  
that the humours and the bynde here is myght consume / is to say / wasted  
and fordon / as it befallith in the Cytie. Where it is fatte / I sayde in þe byr-  
re rebule afore. ¶ Item byrne lytell and bloo / and oftentimes made / that  
is to say / now adryll and now adryll / between the stranguria. ¶ Stranguria  
is I have sayd in the fyfte booke the seconde chapytre. Stranguria is cau-  
sed through oppression / that is to say / stopping of the rebule of the bladder  
of the stone / or of some other of the humours that be byrnde humours / or  
als of stopping / that is to say / through stopping of some Apertume byrning  
that aboute by all these. This causes may be byrnt of matter / that is to  
say / of euell humours with holds and let the byrne. And for such causes are  
other rebule the fletome and the bynde here byrned and byrned and enter-  
er and fletome and so is bloo / other rebule caused in byrne / and namely  
in the stranguria. ¶ Item byrne lytell and bloo and with small grannes  
about in the body of the byrn / and yf the rebule be but particulate about  
as I sayd afore / is between the rebule. ¶ Item of the rebule / or Ethica / or  
Dalla Pulmonica. ¶ But the same maner byrne with totall bloones  
that is too late / bloo through oute / is between the rebule. ¶ Item of the rebule / or  
Dalla Epipatrica / or Catarrhus. ¶ Wallon on the matre / that is too late / rebule  
of the mother / as is a forsayde and none for to knowe well these two for-  
sayde rebules. ¶ Item of the rebule. Anglice / rebule of the Spirituall

ne herof is  
þe flur of þe  
moumbe cau-  
sed.

ne herof is  
þe stranguria



[illegible]

50. xix.

Dissemina  
Spetynge  
of blode

**Ethical:**

Generacyd  
of febre &  
thike.

## Signes of pEthike.

**Drye cough  
Hoyste  
cough.**

**Length of  
body,**



ther be. iii.  
spices of e-  
thike.

The fyrste  
spice.

The secōde  
spice.

The thyrde  
spice.

Diseases of  
p lunges.

withyn dissolupnge the kynde humours in the body and consumpunge the  
spirituales And take good hede that though this unkynde hete be moche in þ  
body Nevertheless comynly in this sekenece it is but lytel or els nothing to  
his chynchyng For comynly they that are disposed most ther to thep are di-  
spoed to so moche colde that they fele but lytell of that hete as in somer and  
yet may they comynly wofle suffer grete hete than other folke But nertthe  
lesse they suffer grete greenes and byynes at the byesse. ¶ Company of womē  
distroct hym moche. ¶ And understonde that there be. iii. spices þ is to saye  
dryuers kyndes of Ethike ¶ The fyrste spice of þ Ethike thou mayst knowe  
by byynes of the body and by unkynde hete for alway it is founde more thā  
kynde hete is and by unkynde hete in the handes and in the fettes and by  
the polces when they are distroct somtyme more and somtyme lesse and  
by moche thyrste and namely yf moche thyrst ouergoo hym before mete this  
after and his byne is hygh Citrine colour and longe lastyng so and yf the  
be red grauell in the bothe. ¶ Chan. ii. spice of the Ethike is knowen  
by grete excess of hete in the body for the body is more traupled with excess  
of hete in the. ii. spice than in the fyrst spice And by lenes and appoyng  
impluyng and wasyng and dewyng of the body as it is in the fyrst spice  
But more alway in the secōde also by thyrst also yf he be more hote after  
mete than afore that is to say in excess but of reason every man is more  
hote after mete than afore and yf his byne be redlyhe and longe tyme in  
stynge so and with moche grauell in the bothe. ¶ Item the. iii. spice of the  
Ethike his body is moche febleshed and consume and pnyed alwaye As  
Aucien sayth that yf one lyfte by his syn it goth not downe agayne playn  
but yf it be put downe agayne playne with a hand And also he pnyeth as  
wel afore mete as after. ¶ The fyrst spice is curable The secōde is nether  
incurable The thyrde is incurable. *Passio pulmonica* is connectyble with the  
it termes *Pulmonia* or *Peripulmonia* the byne may be bloo in. iii. maners *Scinti*  
me bycause of compresyon And somtyme bycause of consumpcon and meltyn  
a way of the lunges. ¶ If the byne in *Pulmonia* be bloo it is bycause of co-  
mpresyon than he feleth payne and hevenesse and ahe as it were a peyse about  
the spūales and that is felt most on the left halfe ¶ If it be cause of con-  
pnyon as when the lunges be over layde over walpunge or cruddeth or  
shoneth with some other membre as with the stomake or w the spleen  
or els with the hartye And when it is so he may knowe it by feyng both  
of that membre that pnyeth and of that membre þ is pnyeth ¶ If it be cause  
of meltyn and wasyng and consumpunge of the lunges than there shal  
with many small greynes in the byne with a cercle frothy and wanlysh  
and bloyssh and that is full perulous byne And when it is so he feleth huge  
payne on his spūales for the lunges are consume and his substance falleth  
and droppeth and beweth all awayne and passeth forth by the lyner And so  
forth by *Venas Capillares* in to the bladder and encreth the byne *Vene*  
*Capillares* is afore sayd in the fyrst boke the secōde chapyer. ¶ *Pleurisia* is a  
sekenece with sharpe ache and strong payne under the ryddes and ther with is

commonly a feuer and sometime springing of blode. Mostly for to speke Pleure-  
 sis is apertains on the rybbes as I sayd of these .ii. wordes Pleura & Pleu-  
 risis & Costa becom to cleue and henge. Pleura & Pleuritis & Costa at all one  
 saue that Pleura & Pleuritis is the rybbe of man And Costa bothe the rybbes  
 of man and also of beestes. Pleura is to cleue to. for both in Pleuritis and also  
 in Pulmonia is grete collection of singulures of hyle corrupte mater. ouer  
 coming & ouerthrowing the spirytualles. whiche collection when the kynde  
 noz the kynde here is not of myght for to desyre it not for to deuyde. noz cast  
 it all away. It gubeth in to a mater contagious. that is to saye. venenous  
 And so that contagious mater gubeth in to Spottum. that is to saye. by-  
 deth into Spottum. Sometime on the lungen And sometime on the rybbes  
 clamping and clouing thecto. wha it is on the rybbes it is called Pleuritis.  
 or Pleurisia. or Pleumoniam. or Detipleuronia. or the Pleura & pleuris. al  
 is one. And wha it is on lungen. it is called Pulmonia. or Dipulmonia. as  
 I sayd afore. Et vnderstande these termes Pleuritis. or Dipleuritis. Pleura  
 & Dipleuria. Pleurisia. or Detipleuritis. Pleura. or Detipleuria. & Detipieu-  
 relia. Pleumoniam. to be on the rybbes. right as I sayd afore of Pulmonia.  
 or Detipulmonia. to be of the lungen. The most of this mater in the chappere  
 be cule coloure. And in the chappere. de Inapen & Inapen. Than the forsayd  
 hyle mater passeth forth by vena cava. of whiche it is said in the .vii. cha-  
 ptere. de Inapen to the lyuer. and there infecteth & tyngheneth the blode  
 For in the lyuer is the pynepall se and place of the blode And after that  
 in the veynes. and there it corrupteth and hurtyth the spys. and so because  
 of infection of both spys. and also of the blode is blones caused in þ hyne  
 Epatica passio. is a fekenesse on the lyuer. whiche passio maye be caused on  
 .iii. maner wyse. One because of feblenes of the lyuer. that is to saye. when  
 it is colde byten. Or because of Dilatation. that is to saye. Swelling. Or els  
 because of reflection of the lyuer. And of the hyne appere blopythe with  
 a maner of wheythernes. it sheweth that the lyuer is colde byten. and because  
 thereof the lyuer is feble and brenghen. of whiche feblenes and brenghen-  
 nesse are styll humours and euill humours in poynt for to gether and gen-  
 der in the Epicondria And thus it is comenly in the colde Idropisy. And  
 the colde Idropisy and of his lices. is in the chappere de alio colore. And  
 Epicondria. the Epicondria. be the places vnder the lyuer. when they be dis-  
 cayed. that is þ hyne intely thecto. & begyn in coloure. If the hyne be reple-  
 te. that is the hyne is thectylle and blopythe with a dynnes and with ache  
 and payne in the ryght Epicondria. Catarrus is a fluxe of Phlegme techy  
 Is a comen fluxe of a member that goth from one member to another And  
 Catarrus is sayd of this wyde Catha. that is to say. comune comen. and of  
 this wyde Rota. that is to say. fluxe. or downpog out. as who saith  
 Catarrus is a comen fluxe And vnderstande that Catarrus is properly a com-  
 me. in the lyde onely. as when it is a about in the lyde. as in þ hyne. for  
 when it is taken with colde And gubeth in to the feutur part of the lyde it  
 cometh out at þ nost. And vnderstande that Catarrus is a comen fluxe of humours

Pleuritis.

*pleura de. sub  
de a. m. costa  
m. c. 3. v. 12*

Generacy-  
 ons of pleu-  
 ritis a pul-  
 monia.

The lyuer  
 is the plase  
 of blode.

Fekenesse  
 of þ lyuer.

Epicondria.

Catarrus.

*de Catha. m. c. 12  
de a. m. c. 12  
de a. m. c. 12*

Retornat



## Liber secundus.

from the hede to the nether partyes of the body/as to the eyen/to the nose/the  
**The reume** chekes/ & Jawes/the throte/and to the hert. If it passe to every partyes of  
 in the hede the hede/that is to say/yt it come to the gones/oz to p. chrys/oz to p. throte/  
 it is not Catarus/ but it is knowne properly for Catarus is no more for to  
 say/ but Capitarus/oz Capitarus/ & is to say/flowing flowing rennyng a  
 & differens howe in the hede for it is but onely in the hede that we calle in englyshe p.  
 betweene ca- synke/as Ropia is the pole And understonde p. there is some dele difference  
 tarru & ru- bptwene Catarus & Ropia & synke. & pole for in Catarus one neth among  
 pian. but in Ropia it is so strong p. he may not neth for. pagn Ropia is sayd of this  
 worde Rois. & of this worde manaria. anglie: swymyng for. Ropia swym  
 meth and floweth about in divers partyes of the body/as I sayd. & I saye yf  
 the byrne seme with a cerule bloo as lede/oz moche toward. It sheweth Epi-  
 lencia/the falling well. & These are p. names of p. falling well. Epilencia  
 & fallynge lekenes. & Epilencia cadus & Epilencia comicialis & Epilencia Jatariclesi & Jadarai. In this seke-  
 nesse alway p. medges of lye are infecte & bulle feble/ & seynt/ & that betoke  
 neth enen more p. bloo cerule. & And who so ever have p. falling well/ his byrn  
 sheweth hi so/ which be p. medges of lye see in ca. de coloz. & opoz. Also p. is  
 the maner byrn with smal greynes in p. cerule/ sheweth a maner of lekenesse  
 & is called Alchites which is one of p. iii. kynde of p. Adopisy. & And it is sayd  
 Alchites of this worde of grewe Alch. & is to say/ here anglie: a costell/ &  
 of this worde of latyn Comus anglie: a townd for who so hath that lekenesse  
 and he have a lytell stroke on his hely/ his wombe sheweth lyke a Costell/  
 oz a botell p. were but half full. & Of these.iii. kyndes of Adopisy. & in p. next  
 chapytre folowynge.

**The Doffe**

**& fallynge lekenes.**

*the byrn & a  
 cirulo 2h. l. and  
 sign. & p. l. & p. l.*

**Alchites.**

**here begyn  
 neth p. cap.  
 of whyt co  
 loure.**

*apud a brina.  
 sign. & p. l. & p. l.  
 & p. l. & p. l.  
 & p. l. & p. l.*

**Sekenesse  
 of p. splen.**

**Explicit. in. ca. de limbo coloz. Incipit. liii. ca. de albo coloz.**  
**A** & beginnyng of this chapytre. take hede p. there is. ii. maner of whyte  
 colours in byrn One is moche toward whyle & another is whytell & a  
 wannyshe & wateryshe/ most lyke glas/oz water/ & such byrne is of p. left  
 maner whytes is curmose called byrn aquosa. anglie: watery byrn. And  
 in this wyse understande/ whyte colour by all this chapytres And in the ma-  
 ner whyte byrn sheweth curmose indigestio. i. euell digestio of humours in  
 p. body. & This understode p. byrn whytes thynne/as I sayd is baryght be-  
 ges/ & is to say/ yf it seme as it hadde caryes & streames shynyng & glytteryng/  
 as glas/ whā p. lomme sheweth therein/ it is an Evident signe/ and token of si-  
 kenes of p. splen/ sekenesse of p. splen is called splenica passio. & That byrn p.  
 is whyte in this sekenesse/ is because of excess of melancolye which letteth  
 febleth p. bynde here & therefore his byrn is rawe & indigeste/ wher through p.  
 byrn hath a contrarious qualyte/ that is to say/ cold & of which coldnes is cau-  
 sed whynesse. & And therefore sayth Galienus p. of whytynes is coldnes of  
 byrn. wher it is thynne/ is because of superfluyte of melancolye/ which de-  
 scendeth to p. enstiffnyng of p. splen/ & boweth a baggeth over p. necke of the  
 bladder/ & collyer nyeth a thynne p. wayes of p. byrn. And whā they be so  
 thynned & pressed/ the byrn is subtil & thynne because thereof And p. baryght  
 & whyte shynyng byrn/as I sayd because of moche plenty of melancolye.

And therefore such hyrn is called *Urina bicalata* begeth / is to say / per-  
 ded also hyrn fenestrata wondrous hyrn And also *urina radiata* / or hyrne  
 radiata / wondrous hyrn / or hyrn full of bright rays / and all is for the same cause  
 the hyrn of age. ¶ The hyrn that whete a thynne a lastyng so long tyme as  
 a matter of bones / or of a byrnnes in the ouer partys of the hyrn / it sheweth a  
 sickness / is called *Leucocostema* which is the .ii. spice of the *Urina* a ydzo  
 picus / wherfore take hede / ther be .iii. spices of the *Urina*. One is caused  
 of aquosyte wntenes / which aquosyte hath in hym a salty thynne / which sal-  
 ty thynnes caused excre in dyrrhe And this salty wntenes is caused a gedyed  
 therabout / where *Cysac* is / vnderstode / as techyth Galien in his *Anatho-*  
*mia*. Eper is wapped a woude in .ii. thyn skynnes / or in .ii. thyn webbes and  
 these .ii. thyn skynnes keperth / desedeth Eper fro burryng a blomyng /  
 ¶ The outest of these .ii. tymes is called *Cicubus* And the next / is to say /  
 that is nyrrer Eper / is called *Cisac*. And by these .ii. webbes of thynne *Cicubus*  
 a *Cisac* goth to certayn byrnes fro the Eper to the *Urina* / beeryng w them melao  
 ipe fro Eper to the *Urina*. ¶ And this spice of *Urina* is called *Alchites* / euer  
 more it cometh of a feble lyuer / is to say / a colde lyuer. And so is euer spice  
 of colde *Urina* / as the most part of auctours techeth. *Apocras* calleth this  
 spice of *Urina* only *Urina* / a whete it is called *Alchites* / I have sayde  
 in the nyrrer ca. afore in the last ende. ¶ *Urinarius* *Urina* is he / both the  
*Urina*. ¶ The .ii. spice of *Urina* is moche caused of cismacie. *Cismacia*  
 a malle *Cismacia* be all one / what it is I have sayd in the last ca. about the  
 ende And as they say / this spice of *Urina* is gedyed in the empty a boyde  
 places of the guttes / it is called *leucocostema* or *leucocostemacia*. *Apocras* called  
 it *leuma* also / a whete it sheweth. ¶ The .iii. spice of *Urina* is called *timpa-*  
*nides* of these lastyng woude *Cipani* / anglice a taboure. For whoso hath this  
 spice of *Urina* / if he haue a lytell stroke on the bely it sheweth holow as  
 a Taboure. *Apocras* calleth this spice of *Urina* *Urina* / a dye *Urina* /  
 it is euer more caused through ventosyte in the body. ¶ Item howe the colde  
*Urina* is caused a gedyed / see in the nyrrer ca. afore of blood colour / about the  
 ende. For if the whete be long tyme lastyng / a matter of the sickness is multi-  
 plyed a stragled by pporall of tyme / a thynne a hyrn whete a thynne. ¶ Item  
 hyrne whete a thynne in quantite / sheweth excre of mete / or of dyrrhe / or  
 els of both for cyght as moche. Oyle quencherth the lyght in the lampe And  
 moche water quetherth a chebeth a stragled feble lyght to excre in me-  
 te a dyrrhe quetherth a fordoth a hynde here in the body of man / he may not  
 haue his effect of digestyon / as he shold And wher it is moche in quantite it  
 may shewe by the same reason. ¶ Item hyrn whete a thynne a small gravel / as mete i excre  
 it sheweth whete a thynne / sheweth a sickness / is called *Stellus* / is to say /  
 a stone in the reynes. This vnderstode this excre in this wyse shortly. ¶ It  
 is to be the hyrn sheweth hyrn than whete a thynne a nyrrer after it come an hyrne  
 whete a thynne / a small chesel in the body a thynne a stone in his reynes / not  
 dyedig / but it is byedde And therefore sayd *Apocras* in his *Urina* a dye  
 hyrn .i. whete a thynne is euer more euil / a namely in the / be nether / as for

*Urina*

The .iii.  
 spices of  
*Urina*.

*Cicubus* and  
*Cisac*.

The dye  
*Urina*.

Tokens of  
 mete i excre  
 se.

The stone.



Calculus in the bladder  
lapis in testis.

## Liber secundus.

netpke. *Scenetyke* is he þ hatþ þ *scenetyke*. *Astresia* or *Astresia* is properly  
whā one hatþ þ *ston* in þ *reynes*. i. in þ *lotondes*. *Calculus* is whā þ *stone* is  
in þ *visle* or *bladder*. But *lapis* is takē generally for þ *stone* both in þ *reyn-*  
*nes* & in þ *bladder* also. *Astresia* or *Astresia* is sayd of this woode in geowē  
*nefresum*. i. ren the *lotondes* *Reynes* in latyn *Reynes* in frensch. *Lotondes* in  
englyshe. *Reynes* properly are. ii. *mēbres* / *nygh* coide / & some dele *holme* / &  
why is the *typpng* in þ *typp* ende of þ *leyn*de. whye the *byrn* is whyte in the *nefresie* / is  
byrn whyt by reason þ all þ *action*. i. the *woykyng* of *kynde* here is occuppēd & belyd  
in *sekenes* bounē the place ther þ *sekenes* is / & by reason therof the. ii. *digestyō* is lettēd  
of þ *stone*. & *impotent* / & is to say / *brumgity* to *woyke* & make *digestyō* as it sholde do  
and so is the *byrn* whyte. ¶ If it is *thyn* bycause þ the *reynes* are so coated  
& strappēd wth the *stone* / that þ *byrn* is spolpēd of his *kynde* colour / & he shold  
haue. ¶ *Ue* herfore the *byrn* hatþ not the *kynde* body that it sholde haue / nor þ  
*kynde* colour / & it sholde haue. ¶ Item yf it so be that *otone* be in an *ague* /  
and his *byrn* be / that is to say / *appere* *linbea* / *subcubea* / *rubicunda* or *subru-*  
*bicunda* / & ther is no certayn token of mēdyng / as now *swetyng* / now *ble-*  
*dyng* at the *nose* / nor no solucio of þ *wombe* / nor non other good token as I  
sayd in þ *chappre* of *blacke* colour And yf afterwarth his *byrn* tounē whyte  
& *thyn* / it sheweth a *sekenes* / & is it called the *frenesie*. *Frenesia* is a *distour-*  
*byng* of þ *soule* wth *harpoules* & *rayng*. And it is alwaye causēd through  
excesse of *coloz* *walmyng* and *stypng* by in to the *byrne* of the *hede*. For by  
cause that he is so *hote* and *byre* / he is so *lyghe* of *kynde* that he *spyth* by as I  
sayd to the *hede* and *woyke*th in the *hede* / and *shaldeth* and *byenneth* þ *byar-*  
*ne* / and so *bindeth* both the *wytte* and the *mynde*. ¶ And *understode* a *colle*  
that *neuer* mozt *salety* / that *Whioptilus* *gyruth* in his *boke* of *byrns* / in  
ea. de albo & *renuicoloze*. That yf þ *byrn* *appere* in the *foylapd* *wyle* in a *fren-*  
*esia* / and that the *byrne* *kepe* hym so *longe* *tyme* / and *ther* *happe* to come a  
*bledyng* at the *nose* / or *swete* / and *namely* on þ *hede* / or els some other good  
token of *mēdyng* / he shall *shape* the *frenesia* / & yf he do not so / he is but *dede*.  
¶ *Ue* bye þ *byrn* is whyte in a *frenesia* / is bycause that *kynde* here is gone by  
to the *byrnes* of the *hede* / as I sayd And so is þ *lyuer* *deprived* & *restrayned*  
of his *kynde* here / & he may not *despye* þ *byrn* / as he sholde do / It is also *thyn*  
by the same reason. ¶ Item *byrn* whyte & *thyn* a *moche* is *celolucous* *small*  
and *long* / as it *saureth* other *wyle* in *water* / that *besse* is *walshyn* in / *the-*  
*with* a *sekenes* that is called *Diabetes* the *diabet*. *Diabetes* est *inmoderata*  
*byrne* *effusio*. *Diabet* is out of *cours* *making* of *byrne* And a *sekenes* that  
sometyme it is causēd of the *distemperanc* of *hete* in the *reynes* And somtyme  
it is causēd through *excesse* of *lecherie* / somtyme of *trauayle* of *cennying* and  
*skyping* and of *suche* other *maner* *pointes* The cause whye þ *byrn* is whyte  
in the *Diabet* / and also *moche* in *quantyte* / is by reason that the *humpdite* is  
*token* and *byawen* awaye in to the *reynes* / by *Uenas* *Capillares* / of which  
is sayde in *primo* *libro*. *Capitulo* *secundo*. And so bycause of that *hasty*  
*passyng* awaye of the *byrne* to the *Reynes* / it maye not haue his *kynde* *re-*  
*stryng* place and *dwelleng* in the *lyuer* / tyll he may take his *kynde* *digestyō* &

what is  
frenesie.

Diabetes.

of which is the  
sweat of the  
in *comedy*

his full coloure & so passeth forth to þe reynes all rawe. And whā it cometh in  
to þe reynes ther he may not take his kynd coloure / for he is not formid ther to  
by cause þe he hadde not afore hande his kynd disposiciō in þe lyuer / & also for  
as moche as he maketh no residence / þe is to say / no dwellinge in þe reynes  
but a mane withoute ony cessyng / or with lytell dwellinge swymmeth forth  
to þe bladder. The forsayd flesshely resoluciōs be nothyng els but wastyng &  
wrekyng & fallyng away of þe substance of þe reynes / caused thogh violence of  
hete which violence is caused thogh veracyō þe is to say thogh moche trauay  
lyng. And also of dysyng ouer moche lechery & foule synne ther of. ¶ Itt of  
þe bygn be whyt & thynne / & the resoluciōs be smale as moles in þe sonne / and  
whyt & round is sheweth Arretica passio. Arretica passio is caused of mater  
viciat / the fallyng of þe bygnys as thou shalt haue in ca. de catopos. ¶ Itt  
Arretica passio / somtyme cometh of colde & somtyme of grete drynes / as Gil-  
bert sayth in his coment / & also it cometh of many other causes as I sayde in  
þe ca. of bloo coloure wher I spake of this word Ethica. And vnderstād þe euery  
skenesse of þe spiritualis & caused of þe spiritualis / be called Arretica passio Arre-  
tica passio & gutta Arretica be al one forther here of yow may se in. iii. li. ca. de  
Arthamis / þe reason why þe bygn is whyt & thynne in Arretica passio / is by  
cause of kynde hete in þe. ii. digestiō / for in Arretica passio is grete hete but  
þe hete & the spys remeth to þe place / ther þe payne & þe skenesse is for to helpe  
hym kyndely as moche as in the is / & by cause ther of þe lyuer & the baynes be  
empty & boyde / & vnderstāde / þe comētoure bys Egidiō saeth þe that be. iii.  
reasōs comēly why bygn is whyt & thyn / þe is to say whyttylbe & thynnyll  
as I sayde in þe begynnyng of this ca. ¶ Somtyme is it by cause of stoppyng  
stuffyng of þe humours in þe body / & namely of colours as whā þe body is not  
a bull for to put oute þe euil humours / & the excessse of the / & namely of coloure  
Also by cause of grete ache & payne & pryckyng in the body / as it faceth in Co-  
lica passio / euermore whā one hath it / fewe folke knowe wel / what Colica  
passio is perty / moche folke wene / þe it be þe stone. ¶ Vnderstāde þe Colon  
is a gutte lyeing by þe necke of þe bladder in to whiche Colon cometh þe thicke  
mater fro the yllons and so forth to longacion as auctours techer as I sayd  
primo libro secundo capitulo. And of this member Colon is sayde Colica  
passio. ¶ And it is caused in this wyse as somtyme the bladder and somtyme  
the necke of the bladder is stopped. And somtyme both are stopped and stuff-  
fed and dystemperd thogh excessse of vnkynde hete. And the same dysemper  
of vnkynde hete dystempereth and dysconforteth Colon & deficiat / þe is to say /  
dysch the feces / that is to say dysch the dysches that be in Colon / and than  
is ther ache and payne a boue the shace somtyme as he sholde dye / and some  
tyme it cometh thogh excessse of Coler / and this is perty Colica. And  
moche folke and many wene and deme it for the stone for her moyst is luche. The dysches  
that be thyneth it is on the bladder. ¶ But this is the difference betwene / the betwene  
whā one hath the stone in the vyse or bladder it is called Calculus perty þe stone and  
as I sayde afore. And than is ther grete pryckyng in the shace with a Colica pas-  
sio / manner of pche and grete dysculite in the pelling. ¶ And as it were so,

resoluto of the  
reynes by synne &  
lechery.

wher of be  
þe flesshely  
resoluciōs  
caused.

wher of is  
Arretica  
passio cau-  
sed.

ther be. iii.  
reasōs why  
whyt bygn  
is thynne.

Colon is a  
gutte.

wher of is  
colica pas-  
sio caused.



## Liber secundus.

Colica pas-  
sio.

a brennyng in the perbe and with a harde wambe by cause of pressing & con-  
stapnyng and chespyng of longacis. And therewith of fteyne cometh. Ilien  
passio. But whil it is Colica passio thā is payne before & bladder somdele  
for Colica passio is betwene & reynes & the bladder & then & payne is forte  
more then in the stone. & in Artetica passio. And his pressing is not so let-  
ted as it is in the stone and Colica byngeth one more done and more tou-  
menteth and more lesseth his appetyte and more mervaillyth hym than doth  
the stone. Of the stone and how it is gendred loke in capitulo de harenpo.  
And somtyme Colica cometh by cause of excess of coles and therefore whil so  
hath Colica Passio and his byrne be whiter and thynne it is strong perill  
And namely yf the byrne last so longe tyme that is to say .v. dayes or .vi.  
dayes or .ii. dayes or more and therefore sayeth Hippocras that whilte byrne  
in Colica is the worst token that maye be in that fehenesse Hippocras sawe  
a woman have Colicam and her byrne was waterysh and thynne. And  
than he sayde that she shoulde not shope .v. dayes and on the .v. daye she dyed  
as Galienus and Iliac reherseth. And yf the byrne shewe well colozed in  
Colica it is good token of syne as Auicenna and Syberrus sayeth for  
it sheweth that the matere ther of whiche maye be in .ii. maners as I sayde  
eygh now is broken and disperpled and diskatted and that bynde begyn-  
neth for to overcome and ouer mayste the fehenesse. ¶ Item the .iii. capon  
whilte byrne is waterysh and wannyshe is by cause of feblenes of digestion of  
the humours for by reason that the humours myght not be desyred nor depu-  
red as they shoulde be yf digestyon were good the humours be mixte with the  
byrne and so the byrne sheweth hym in such the wyse and this is enen more ge-  
nerall significatiō of byrn waterysh and wannyshe & also by coldnes of the  
byrne the digestyon is letted & that causeth water & canyenes in the byrne &  
that is principall cause whilte byrn is waterysh. ¶ Item whilte & thyn  
withoute any mo cōceptō sheweth fehenesse & is called Signa coletis a black  
colout whiche is no thyng els but excess of melancolpe. Coletis is sayde of  
this woerde of grewe Colon & is to say as for the gall. And of this woerde  
of grewe. Flots & is to say fluxus a flode. Than is coletis Signa this mothe  
to say a bolnyng flode of the galle. Also melancolpe is sayd of this woerde of  
grewe. Melan & is to say Signa balche & of this woerde in grewe Colon  
gall as who say blacke gall or blacke humours. And so Signa Coletis and  
excess melancolie and Signa humoy anglicis a blacke coletis and excess of me-  
lancolpe and blacke humours are as who sayeth al one. Of this process and  
of that I sayde in the fyrst booke the thyrde capitulo ther I expounde these  
.ii. termes cognat & dominat and also of & I sayde in & fyrst ca. of this bo-  
oke. ¶ Melancolpe be whilte I spake of this woerd melancolia thou mayest know what is excess of  
disposeth & melancolpe. And understande that Melancolie disposeth & byrn & is to say  
byrn .ii. man causeth colozs in the byrn in .ii. maner wyse by cause of his owne kynde & by  
ner of wy- cause of his qualites. ¶ By cause of his owne kynde he maketh the byrne  
le. blackyshe. And & is cause of admixtiō of other humours as it befallerh comly  
in menyng of a feuer quartayne after & kynd of his qualites be disposeth &

byrne. The qualites of melancholic are frigiditas & siccitas. For melancholic is frigidus and siccus as thou haste in primo libro. iii. capit. ¶ By cause that he is cold he causeth whitenes in þe byrne / for þe property of coldnes is to make the byrne white / or helow. And therefore auctours sayeth that Albedo est filia frigiditatis. Engliche whitenes in byrne is the chyld of coldnes. ¶ Also by cause of drynes he maketh the byrne thynne / for the property of drynes is to make þe byrne thynne & cleere. ¶ Item byrne white & thynne & with a blowe & drynes aboute / or els with a blowe & cleere / are alone to say / it sayeth Galienus þe Epilecia of Epilecia is in capitulo de ludo colore the byrne cleere is by cause of passyng of modyes of lyfe þe is to say þe Cerebrum whiche be þe pynnyng modyes of lyfe. ¶ Item yf þe byrne shewe hym whete & thynne / with a manner of helownes & greenes & bypbe. And cleere sheweth a schenes þe is called Scrothomia the Scrothomia Scrothomia & verrigo / is all one in this faculte / þe dasyng as whitenes hede dasyng / so þe thynketh þe all the house / & all þe world turneth as bouthym / or by so done / & this schenes is of tyme caused of melancolie on this wyse humosities growe & blacke / & the byrne is to þe scrothomia & that bymeth & dulles & infecteth. And byteth þe spys of lyfte & the spys of lyfe And þe causeth þe dasyng in þe hede. The whiche hede cometh of grete frigidite & be clevenes & byghenes is caused of grete siccite. ¶ Item byrne whete & thynne sheweth heermops coldnes of þe lyuer / by cause of whiche coldnes digestio is letted / & that causeth rawe & watery humours in the bodye. And that is cause why the byrne is whetyshe & watrysh. ¶ Item yf the byrne be whete and thynne / in an ague it sheweth deeth. But understad this tokole in dyuers maner wyse. For yf an byrne shewe hym whete & thynne in the begynnig of an ague þe is to say in a sharpe fever / it sheweth Crudite or rawnes of the matere and feblenes of kynde hete / & that the schenes wyll longe laste / and that kynde and the schenes shall haue stronge fyrgh and batayll to gedet / and that the schenes shall haue the maystry. And pynceppally yf ther be no euell signes. I spake of good tokens and of euell tokens in the .ii. chapter of blacke colours. And therefore that the man or woman is not to be taken an hande / but yf it be so that ther sheweth some good signes / & pynceppally myghte of kynde / also yf the byrne appereth white and thynne in the waxyng / or in the standyng of the schenes whiche before was Ruber or sub-rubea Rubicunda / or sub-rubicunda / other it sheweth the freneshe / or els it sheweth mortifycyon of kynde hete and that is by cause that substancyall humydite is consumed and waste away / and also by cause that he hath not his kynde noysshing. as he wolde and as he sholde haue tober with the patient is consumed / and bothe these popetes sheweth deeth. Then substancyall humydite / is the blode of the lyuer / and his kynde fede and noysshing is whiche hede. If the byrne shewe hym so in the endyng of the schenes / that / is to say in the swagyng of the ague and by sope that byrne appered any signes of medyng it is token of recoueryng / thus sayeth Galienus therfor Gilbertus sayeth yf the byrne shewe hym whete and thynne in þe endyng / that is to say in the

whitenes is  
þe daughter  
of coldnes.

Scrothomia  
& verrigo.

with by some whete  
of this & a way  
of ycalous or  
grete a whete

by midde  
substancia  
ly.



Gilbertus.

payne of þ  
shoulders.

al humors  
ingested  
causeth thi  
nes and di  
gested thi  
nes.

ending of the febrile is sheweth that the febrile will begeth agayne.  
For is sheweth that the humors and febrile have hadde battell and fight to-  
gether. And the humors hath overcome a parte of the febrile. wherthrough  
the humors is so remayed and so put under that he is impotent. that is to say the  
myght and not of power for to overcome the febrile and to overcome he is so  
lost and sheweth may be. ¶ Item wher the humors and the febrile in olde folle  
sheweth febrile of digestion and becometh of humors. ¶ Item wher  
wher the humors in a child sheweth cold of febrile. ¶ Item wher  
and the humors both are purged and sheweth about the shoulders and the  
necks sheweth febrile that is called a lipothomia the lipothomia what is  
Lipothomia a sincopis is in þ next Chapter above. ¶ And when one febrile  
on this impotent in the febrile places it is a token that a lipothomia will  
come. Lipothomia is caused that when humors be lesch and sapiently gra-  
femolites shew up about the places above said. and when the well fa-  
mollis togeth the humors then they cometh about the heart and the febrile  
alles for then that membre that it is habit vite the rote of life. that is to  
say þ heart is not wiche and by this wherthrough cesseth þ myght the myght  
of the soule. And so is the bodye halfe dede. and the other cometh shew-  
nyng. as I shew in the next chapter above. ¶ Item of the humors appetit  
wher the humors in the body that the patient hath his febrile. that is to  
say his febrile sheweth is sheweth a bodye quarene caused of febrile. But  
then in the next day after that cesseth the humors swethen to pallid or sub  
pallid. Pale as the pale. ¶ Item of an humors sheweth humors wher the  
humors of the febrile and the humors and by this iniquity a theke and trouble  
in the bottom. And then come after that an humors moche iniquity. it shew-  
eth weryng of a fever. Colic humors caused of febrile vite. And under this  
that ture of the. iii. humors out taken febrile vite alone to be is In-  
digested he causeth the humors in the humors. and if it be digested it causeth the hu-  
mors in the humors. But febrile vite both contrary. And then for whyle the  
febrile vite is weryng and Indigested it maketh ridence and wery  
standeth the deperance whiche humors molde deperant out by the humors and  
may not be cause of humors. But afterwarde to be digested is confort a myght  
ed through a pale vite. then that some febrile vite is refolued and by ge-  
ne that is to say weryng and deperant and disperple. and so is the humors  
indigested and the humors that febrile vite perant accordeth well to. For as  
in the. iii. partys in the. iii. partys. And Theophilus in his boke of humors  
¶ Item of an humors sheweth humors wher the humors with a maner of refol-  
ed by the febrile sheweth blacke. And febrile vite is sheweth the febrile  
causeth thion beneath of febrile vite. whiche melancolie is weryng and blacke  
humors. For of all humors it is most weryng. that is to say most weryng  
and hath most of the weryng. The febrile vite is the comestouch to  
sheweth the humors humors. ¶ Item wher the humors and the humors with humors  
blacke refolued in the bottom sheweth. Conspicuous. spelled Conspicuous  
¶ This finale refolued is in the. iii. boke. And under this generally

these thre wherof the first is to saye wherof the water is the thynnyest  
as I sayd in the first ende of this ca. and as all this ca. teacheth. & wherof the  
is to be understoode euermore pyncypally. & it is caused of indigestion & de-  
fecte of kynde here wherof cometh inclusion of wynde in the body & exten-  
sion. & that is to saye. stretching and blowing in the Spicondys and blowing  
in the wynde in the lydes & about the rybbes as flowmes. sapynnes. bulnes and  
howmes in the body & in the armes. & in the legges & in all the body. & it cau-  
seth impediment in the wyttes. & also in the meuyng of the soule. & euill disposicio  
in the hede. namely in the left syde. what be the Spicondys. & haue it in next  
ca. after. Includyng of wynde is caused on this wyse. when kynde here is lytel  
& feble and unmyghty for to resolute. & is to saye. to dycke. & vnderweye & wayt  
away the euill humours. than the body places of the body. gadeth. gedreth  
eyes in to them. And then the same eyes & wynde descendeth in to these places  
And agereth all the body. and thus Inclusion of wynde causeth the spys of  
whose vertue is caused the meuyng & the myghtyness of the myght of the mem-  
bers. & lynes of the body to be feble. & the sapynnes. & bulnes. & howmes. &  
rokyng. & the fumolys compynge of the humours that are crude and carue & indi-  
gested. caused of defecte of kynde here. & than the superfluytes of the humours  
descende downe in to the bryne of the armes. and of the thies of the legges  
And than he thynketh to his persueyng. that these parties be very deny and  
nosfull. & all distemperd. And also the foresayd fumolys passeth forth about  
in to the instrumentes of the. v. wyttes. that is to saye. to the eyes to the eyes.  
and to all the other. & bulleth. & heueth. & distempereth and euill disposith the  
and the spys also. And so it causeth Impediment of all the wyttes. and of the  
spys. and also of the meuyng and of the myghtes and wythynge of the soule  
¶ Also the same fumolys. when they styte thus vp in to the hede. & entreteth  
the Coraytes. it causeth ache and euill disposicions in the hede. and namely  
in the left parte of the hede. for ther is the pyncypall see. that is to saye. the  
pyncypall place of melancolye. for ther he regneth more than in any place of  
the body. save in the spleen. ¶ And therefore. for as moche as the same fumoli-  
te is so. caused and gendred. as I sayd ryght now. by reason of feblenes and  
defaute of kynde here. it draweth kyndly to the place in the hede. & is most an-  
sweryng and accordyng to hym in kynde. ¶ And vnderstode. & euery of the  
iiii. humours hath. ii. pyncypal sees. i. pyncypal places in the body of man. places of the  
in which places he regneth. & is lord. & mayster. & hath most power. & owne  
place is about in the hede. & the other byneth in the body. ¶ For blode regneth  
in the fourmost parts of the hede. and in the body in the lyer. for ther is his  
pyncypall place. ¶ Coler regneth in the ryght syde of the hede & in the gall  
in the body. ¶ Melancolye in the left syde of the hede. & in the spleen. ¶ Fleuma  
regneth in the pynnet parte of the hede. and in the lungen.

what signi-  
fyeth wha-  
ter byn-  
nyng

how is w<sup>c</sup>  
de gederith  
in the body.

Instrum-  
tes of the. v.  
wyttes.

Pyncypal  
place of me-  
lancolye.

places of the  
iiii. humours.

Places of  
the blode. co-  
ler. melan-  
colye. & fleu-  
ma.

Explicit quartus ca. De alio colore. Incipit quintus ca. De quarta Virtute.

¶ **Q**uarta Virtus pelow bynne. as all auctours teacheth is most true & ryght here begyn-  
neth bynne wherof the pelow bynne. & all the for the pelow bynne is euermore with pelow  
colore.



## Liber secundus.

bryghte & yf chynnes were medled w<sup>th</sup> yelowre byrne & chynnes sholde forde  
 p<sup>r</sup> byghenes for w<sup>th</sup>oute byghenes is no yelowre And p<sup>r</sup> is the cause why  
 auctours sette of yelowre colours nyxt after whetyllhe colours for it is  
 nyxt bynne w<sup>th</sup> w<sup>th</sup> of bynde both in colour & also in significacye. ¶ In co-  
 lours for it is but as whetyllhe colour in bynne saue p<sup>r</sup> it is a lytell more intense  
 that is to say a lytell more deper in colour / that is because of yelowrenes.  
 ¶ Also in significacye for it signyfeth ryght as doth bynne of which it is  
 trected in p<sup>r</sup> nyxta before saue that it sheweth better digestyon / than bynne  
 whetyllhe & wateryllhe both & so his colour is properly whetyllhe & his significacye  
 is indigestyon / p<sup>r</sup> is to say / feble digestyon as it is of bynne / p<sup>r</sup> is whetyllhe and  
 chynnyllhe except as I sayd before. ¶ And bynne yelowre sheweth that m<sup>l</sup> &  
 colpe caryeth in the body lyke as wateryllhe bynne sheweth p<sup>r</sup> fleume caryeth  
 in the body And vnderstande that euery of these .iiii. humours dyuerteth and

**Nota** that togethe chaungeth colours in bynne as folowth. ¶ In the begynnyng of the sekenesse for as moche as he is indigested & nothyng  
 euery of the in the begynnyng of the sekenesse for as moche as he is indigested & nothyng  
 se. iiii. hum of his grosse parties myxt w<sup>th</sup> p<sup>r</sup> bynne it maketh the bynne yelowre But  
 outs dyuert afterwarde when the sekenesse increaseth and is in his state / and that kyn  
 set they co de hath more wrought and hath mapstred that humours and dyspyled hem  
 lours. well aboute / than it maketh the bynne blacke and grosse that is to saye /  
 wateryllhe and chynnyllhe.

**Fleume.** ¶ Item fleume fyrst whyle it is indigested /  
 it maketh the bynne whetyllhe / or whetyllhe and menely chynne. ¶ But in the  
 entrespyng of the sekenesse / and in the standyng of the sekenesse / when kynde  
 begynneth to w<sup>th</sup>er myghte / than he mapstred and shaketh and dyspyled the  
 fleume abroode through helpe of hete / and maketh the bynne pale / or palpyll  
 and grosse and chynne. ¶ Item Coloz fyrst maketh p<sup>r</sup> bynne chynne / but w<sup>th</sup>h  
 it is menged w<sup>th</sup> fleume / it is engrossed / that is to saye / thyched / and so it

**Coloz.** ¶ Item Coloz fyrst maketh p<sup>r</sup> bynne chynne / but w<sup>th</sup>h  
 it is menged w<sup>th</sup> fleume / it is engrossed / that is to saye / thyched / and so it  
 engrosseth the bynne / and maketh bynne more depe in colour than it was fyrst  
 oure indy- For as I sayd in p<sup>r</sup> nyxta chappere of oze / euery humour indigest / causeth bynne  
 gest caused thynne / and digested causeth the bynne to be chynne / saue fleume biter which  
 thynnes in doth contraye And therefore as I sayd / there is no difference bytweene bynne  
 bynne & di- that is whetyllhe and chynne / and yelowre bynne / saue as I sayd / p<sup>r</sup> yelowre  
 gester thyn- is not so malycious for as me be as it is more depe in colour than whetyllhe / it  
 nes. sheweth more kynde hete / & le perill / than doth whetyllhe. And therefore saue  
 only these two poyntes that I sayd before / thou shalt Judge of yelowre  
 bynne / ryght as of whetyllhe bynne. In all these chengys that are sayd in the  
 nyxta chappere afore. ¶ For reme vnderstande that bynne yelowre w<sup>th</sup>h  
 a menely chynnes sheweth the bynne to be of a splancolpe man / or woman

**There be** ¶ Item bynne yelowre and more chynne than chynne sheweth tokens of an  
 b. spires of Egge fleume. ¶ Nowe to be hede as Iohannicus teacheth in his Serapio-  
 fleume. tis primo capitulo. that there are .b. spires of fleume. One maner of fleume  
 Naturall there is / that is called properly fleuma / and this fleuma is not myxt w<sup>th</sup>  
 fleume. non other humours / but standeth in his owne proper kynde And that is cal-  
 led properly fleuma naturale / a kynde fleume. For fleuma naturale. Is kyndly  
 frigidu or humidu. ¶ The secunde spire is called fleuma dulce / anglice p<sup>r</sup> freshe fleume

and that is myrte with blood/ and therfore that is best of all fletomes/ after  
 fletoma naturale/ for it is most of the properte of blode/ that is to say/ of humi-  
 ditye and calidite. The. iii. spice is fletoma salum/ anglice the salte fletome/  
 that to be call properly the salte fletome And it is enferre with coloz a myrte  
 and maysted/ and euercome with coloz And bycause therof it is moste Ca-  
 lidum & siccum. For the qualites of coloz be hote and drye. ¶ The. iiii. spice  
 is fletoma acetosum or fletoma actum/ a fletome acetose/ or an Egger fletome/  
 a sharpe fletome/ a sobye fletome/ Acetosum & actum is sharpe and soure/  
 Actum is sharpe and eger/ as soure ale/ or sharpe apell/ or byneger And this  
 maner of fletome hath most of melancolye And therfore of all fletomes it is  
 moste colde and drye. ¶ The. v. spice of fletome/ is called fletoma vitrum/ or  
 fletoma aquosum/ anglice a fletome vitre/ or an heus fletome/ that is to say/  
 a water fletome/ or a watery fletome And this maner of fletome is euer mo-  
 re caused through excessse of colde and of congelacion of þ blode/ and through  
 coldnes and cloddypng and clamyng of the blode/ as it is comly in olde fol-  
 ke/ that sayleth bynde here bycause of age. But understode suche maner byn  
 that is to say/ yelowe/ is more thycke than thynne/ as I sayd afoze/ and also  
 as all surtours sayth. It oweth rather to be called to be byn/ than yelow  
 byn for it sheweth more of whytenesse of yelowenes/ who so Judged wll  
 the coloure therof. ¶ He muste take hede of. iiii. maner of whytenes in þ byn  
 as all surtours techeth. ¶ One is byght and clere/ accordyngt moche to  
 wearde grenes/ and suche maner byn sheweth euer more Dominium Melancolie.  
 Dominium is no more to saye/ but lordshyppe and maystey/ than is it this  
 moche for too saye/ that Melancolye regneth/ and is mayster in the body.  
 ¶ Another maner of whytenesse there is/ that is sondele byght/ goynge  
 a lytell towards rednesse And in as moche/ as it is less byght/ he is the mo-  
 re thycke in the body/ and withoute sayle/ suche byn sheweth a coloz brode  
 in fletome/ that is to saye overcomen with excessse of fletome. ¶ The. iii.  
 maners of whyte bynes/ that hath none of al these condrepanis/ that is  
 to saye/ neyther of greynesse/ nor of rednesse/ and these euer more sheweth  
 fletome/ as I sayd in the nyxe chapytre afoze.

see the flet-  
me.

Salt flet-  
me;

soure flet-  
me;

Ther is. iiii.  
maner why-  
tnes in byn-  
me.

here be-  
gyn-  
neth myn-  
whyte col-  
oure.

**E**xtra hunc. ¶ The. i. spice of fletome/ is called fletoma vitrum/ or  
 fletoma aquosum/ anglice a fletome vitre/ or an heus fletome/ that is to say/  
 a water fletome/ or a watery fletome And this maner of fletome is euer mo-  
 re caused through excessse of colde and of congelacion of þ blode/ and through  
 coldnes and cloddypng and clamyng of the blode/ as it is comly in olde fol-  
 ke/ that sayleth bynde here bycause of age. But understode suche maner byn  
 that is to say/ yelowe/ is more thycke than thynne/ as I sayd afoze/ and also  
 as all surtours sayth. It oweth rather to be called to be byn/ than yelow  
 byn for it sheweth more of whytenesse of yelowenes/ who so Judged wll  
 the coloure therof. ¶ He muste take hede of. iiii. maner of whytenes in þ byn  
 as all surtours techeth. ¶ One is byght and clere/ accordyngt moche to  
 wearde grenes/ and suche maner byn sheweth euer more Dominium Melancolie.  
 Dominium is no more to saye/ but lordshyppe and maystey/ than is it this  
 moche for too saye/ that Melancolye regneth/ and is mayster in the body.  
 ¶ Another maner of whytenesse there is/ that is sondele byght/ goynge  
 a lytell towards rednesse And in as moche/ as it is less byght/ he is the mo-  
 re thycke in the body/ and withoute sayle/ suche byn sheweth a coloz brode  
 in fletome/ that is to saye overcomen with excessse of fletome. ¶ The. iii.  
 maners of whyte bynes/ that hath none of al these condrepanis/ that is  
 to saye/ neyther of greynesse/ nor of rednesse/ and these euer more sheweth  
 fletome/ as I sayd in the nyxe chapytre afoze.



## Liber secundus.

ther be but all other colours are mixte and compoude of them two. But whyte colour  
it colour of which we see of by al this chapter is properly colour. For of al colour  
p[ri]ncipal þ in byne it is most contrarie to blacke colour. And so is non other colour.  
test be but but this. And it is called Lactea that is to say milke whyte not so whyte  
me colours as milke. For so whyte is non byne. But it goeth muche toward milke.

and therfore they lyken it mooste to whyte in colour. ¶ And understande that  
the dyfference betwene Lactea sheweth hym euermore with a chynglyng that is to say  
ce betwene with a chynglyng body. And for to knowe this terme Chynglyng. Understande  
thynne and be the dyfference betwene Chynglyng and Chynglyng. For thynne is properly  
thynne.

whan the byne is all full thynne that is to say cyghe thynne. ¶ Chynglyng  
thynne is whan it is but ager thynne / or els menely thynne / in þ same wyse  
understande thynne and chynlyng whyte and whytlyng blacke and blacke  
lynglyng blacke and blacklyng cyghe and cynglynglyng / and so of all other thus

wherof is techetlynglyng. And this colour in byne is euermore caused of frigidite  
mylk color ouergering humyde. As quere techetlyng. For whan colde woorketh in to  
caused. moystnesse the colde maketh the moystnesse whyte. And colde woorkyng  
in to drynesse maketh the byne blacke. ¶ For cyghe whan here moyst  
ness in to moystnesse it maketh blacknesse. And whan here woorketh in to  
drynesse it causeth whytnesse. In the same wyse Colde doth. ¶ Chynlyng  
of an byne shewe hym Lactea & Subtilis milke and thynnynglyng as I  
sayde cyghe nowe aforesaid in the begynnyng of an ague with euell tokens.

it sheweth dothe. ¶ Whan the byne is Lactea or Subtilis that is to  
say moche whyte and thynnynglyng it sheweth that the matre is compacte  
and rawe and indigested and that the lyue is overcome with colde and  
cruelty of his bynde here because that bynde here wyll styre vp in to the Cere-  
brym which is a token that he is disposed to a frenesye and that is yette  
more perill for it sheweth woorkyng and mynynglyng of his Cerebrym.

Cerebrym. ¶ Spangys byne is a myke. As whilke techetlyng that is wonder soft  
and tender and nellyng in bynde. And therfore bynde here is but lytell and  
feble and maye not suffer no distemperance. ¶ And also the  
byne is but menely hote and drye and is maye not suffer excels of hote.

And therfore whan it is trempled with excels of hote be it moche or lytell  
it is bynded and overcome. And therfore if a frenesye come in an ague it  
is a token of deth but he haue the better helpe. ¶ From the byne is a me-  
ber that is mooste p[ri]ncipall and mooste nobill member of all the members.

Byndon that the sole which is lyttel in the body is in euery parte of  
the body as well in the schynest partes as in the darrest partes as in þ inner  
partes and most nobill partes. And he is called the byndon. Byndon that  
he shold the better and purer wyse take and cyghe in the bynde and for  
men of wyte and of vnderstandyng and also in desirynge and byngyng  
and in surmountyng and in all suche other potentes. Also the byn-  
ne is combe to the entent that there shold no superfluous engendred and enter  
there and abyde there in. ¶ Forther in this matre that is to say of the bynde

Byndon that the sole which is lyttel in the body is in euery parte of  
the body as well in the schynest partes as in the darrest partes as in þ inner  
partes and most nobill partes. And he is called the byndon. Byndon that  
he shold the better and purer wyse take and cyghe in the bynde and for  
men of wyte and of vnderstandyng and also in desirynge and byngyng  
and in surmountyng and in all suche other potentes. Also the byn-  
ne is combe to the entent that there shold no superfluous engendred and enter  
there and abyde there in. ¶ Forther in this matre that is to say of the bynde

Byndon that the sole which is lyttel in the body is in euery parte of  
the body as well in the schynest partes as in the darrest partes as in þ inner  
partes and most nobill partes. And he is called the byndon. Byndon that  
he shold the better and purer wyse take and cyghe in the bynde and for  
men of wyte and of vnderstandyng and also in desirynge and byngyng  
and in surmountyng and in all suche other potentes. Also the byn-  
ne is combe to the entent that there shold no superfluous engendred and enter  
there and abyde there in. ¶ Forther in this matre that is to say of the bynde

Byndon that the sole which is lyttel in the body is in euery parte of  
the body as well in the schynest partes as in the darrest partes as in þ inner  
partes and most nobill partes. And he is called the byndon. Byndon that  
he shold the better and purer wyse take and cyghe in the bynde and for  
men of wyte and of vnderstandyng and also in desirynge and byngyng  
and in surmountyng and in all suche other potentes. Also the byn-  
ne is combe to the entent that there shold no superfluous engendred and enter  
there and abyde there in. ¶ Forther in this matre that is to say of the bynde

Byndon that the sole which is lyttel in the body is in euery parte of  
the body as well in the schynest partes as in the darrest partes as in þ inner  
partes and most nobill partes. And he is called the byndon. Byndon that  
he shold the better and purer wyse take and cyghe in the bynde and for  
men of wyte and of vnderstandyng and also in desirynge and byngyng  
and in surmountyng and in all suche other potentes. Also the byn-  
ne is combe to the entent that there shold no superfluous engendred and enter  
there and abyde there in. ¶ Forther in this matre that is to say of the bynde

Byndon that the sole which is lyttel in the body is in euery parte of  
the body as well in the schynest partes as in the darrest partes as in þ inner  
partes and most nobill partes. And he is called the byndon. Byndon that  
he shold the better and purer wyse take and cyghe in the bynde and for  
men of wyte and of vnderstandyng and also in desirynge and byngyng  
and in surmountyng and in all suche other potentes. Also the byn-  
ne is combe to the entent that there shold no superfluous engendred and enter  
there and abyde there in. ¶ Forther in this matre that is to say of the bynde

and of the Cerebrye. If you lyfte to knowe you maye see moze therof in the nytte Chappre folowynge. ¶ Item to be the hyne is Subtynall and thynnyll / as I sayde is by Reason of temperon of the humours. And also by cause that the hynde is lyfte up / and styed up to the Cerebrye. And also by cause that the hynde is byscrope of his hynde here / so moche that ther is no resolucyon / that is to say / no byedynge noz no dyspersyng of the humours / and so ther is no in spylacyn / that is to say / in the wayng of the hyne. ¶ For as I sayde in the last chappre afore / encreasynge humors Indygeste thynnyeth the hyne / and dygested thynnyeth the hyne. ¶ Compaction of matter / is when the humour is clobbered and clammed and clumped to gether / and indigested / hardesoz to be dygested. And therfore as I sayde the hyne with euill sanour and euill signes is a token of deeth / but if the soylayde hyne be with good signes / it sheweth mystryng of the sphenes / and that is not by suche maner hyne / for suche colour in hyne / is encreasynge fullerte and is euill in hym selfe / and full perlyous to be not the good signes that sheweth them therewith. ¶ Item vnderstande another point / that though the hyne appere suche and with good signes neuer the less / the sphenes wyl not come awayne / for it wyl be longe tyme and that the sphenes in hym selfe / is stronge and myghty / by cause of compaction of the matter of the sphenes / as I have sayde cyghte now. For the matter is so hard clobbered and clammed together and so bried together / and forstayed by reason of his crudyte and of his indigestyon / that he withstan deeth and dygesteth harde with the hynde / and wyl not be obdyent to the hynde / that is to say / wyl not be overcome / nor overcome of the hynde noz resolved / that is to say / noz dygested. ¶ And therfore in every sphenes ther appereth other good signes / or euill signes / or els both to gether as well in the parton of the sphenes man as in his hyne / be the good signes you shall perceyue what lycheode is of his recoveryng / and so be the euill signes you shall perceyue the contrary. ¶ Which are good signes / and which are euill tokens I have sayde in capitulo de Signis coloris. ¶ And as I sayde thoug ther be many good and fewe euill / or many euill & fewe good / or els euill of bothe the more myghty tokens wyl haue the masterye. But the best signes that maye be in a sphenes man / is myght of hynde / and the contrarye twelfe. And that is the reason why of all tyme yonge folke may better be helpe than olde / and also the medecyne wyl take moze effecte in them / than in olde folke / and also oftentyme it falleth that yonge folke semeth as dede / & thre piers is made / and all thyngs redde / & afterwarde they recover to lyfe / and that is by reason of a batell betweene the sphenes and the hynde. The sphenes overcome hynde saue that the hynde hath a swerle of myghte more than he / but in olde folk it is not comonly so. ¶ Item the same maner hyne in the encreasynge that is to say in the wayng of the sphenes that is to say / it hath long haldeyn hym a after the .ii. or .iii. success / and som sayeth after the .iiii. it sheweth the same thyng and on a same maner thou shalt fynde

or why  
Liber secundus  
Liber secundus  
Liber secundus



colore.

a fever pla  
netype.

accession the cours of his humours or of the humour of whiche he is caused whiche humours regneth and are moste p[er]fite and habundant in mannes body upon the cours of the planetes. And in the hours that planetes regned in. And so may every maner feuer be called. *Plastica febris.*  
 ¶ Item lactea and subtenus with out any feuer is euell sp[irit]e for it sheweth that the body is disposed to aduopye in the feuer Interplat comenly is the with colde. Juicen sayeth that colde is caused of mater of humours not corrupte. ¶ Calor h[um]ore is caused of matere corrupte. The mater that is cause of a feuer is gendred withoute his vessels that is to say withoute his paynes for h[um]ore may stretch and overcometh and sheweth and casteth hym out to the better partes of the body as ferre as he may for to mundrye the body. It is to say for to putge and make cleane the body / whiche matere causing feuer it be. ¶ Plimathe it caused frigus / if it be colyke it causeth rigor Anglice shakynge and cackynge for colde. And it be of melancolpe it caused Oripilation Anglice greynge and greynge in. Interplat is and in Cotidians comenly is Frigus Intercitis Rigor Inquartanis Oripilation. And take hede that as auctours of dyphyshe teacheth difference by twene Rigor and Frigus. ¶ And as Halp sayeth in his perfecty and also all auctours that Rigor is with pykyng and pyckynge and payne in the membres Animals. Anglice in the membres of lyfe. And some tyme as it were with a thorne in membres animatis that is to say in the membres of lyfe and that is by cause of fumolytes hore and sharpe byng by to the hede what be membres of lyfe ke in the next case whan it is but Frigus than is colde in y[m]b[er]es as it were knowe or yse and that is by cause of fumolytes that are slowe and heuy in comynge. ¶ Also eyth a onther poynt ther is of difference betwene Rigor et Frigus. For whan it is Rigor ther is more quakynge & cheueryng than whan it is but Frigus. And that is by cause of thornes of coloz / p[er]tyng and pykyng and pyckynge the membres of lyf. And whan it is but Frigus ther is not so moche quakynge and cheueryng as whan it is Rigor. And that is by cause of duines and dedenes of fleume corrupte. ¶ Item whan it is Rigor ther is syt strange colde and grete cheueryng & after grete hore by cause of smertthenes and woodnes of coloz & whan it is frigus ther is soft cheueryng & after soft hore it is by reason of duines and heupnesse of fleume. Oripilation is differens fro bothe that is to say bothe fro Frigus and fro Rigor. For Oypilation is more stronger raskynge and shakynge / than whan it is Frigus or Rigor. ¶ Also Oypilation is colde by cause of clodenes and Rigor is hore by cause of sp[irit]e. And as the cygones builders byest. And that is by cause of terrestr of melancolpe.

Rigor in a feuer.

Oypilacio

the difference betweene frigus & Rigor.

an other difference betweene rigor and frigus.

frigus et rigor

Oypilacio

Explicit capitulum de Letia urina.

Incipit capitulum de colore Karopos.

her begynneth coloz karopos.

**C**olor Karopos. For as moche as it is moche nere toward the whyte colour and belowe colour in vygne / bothe in hore and in lyf. nese and moost accordyng in sp[irit]e raskynge. ¶ Therfor auctours



*Karapos partly  
wh. partly yellow*

## Liber secundus.

**what syg-  
nifycat co-  
lour karopos.**

**mastery in  
the body.**

**flavus.**

**The batell  
betwene þ  
kynd & the  
sekene.**

terwith þ karopos nirt after them afore. And for to knowe colour karopos underhand that as auctours techeth is haly sondele of whyte colour & sondele of yellowe colour. And sondele of blacke colour but most of whyte as clothe made of whyte and blacke / having more of whyte. And theas auctours lerneth it to þ best of Camyls hene / a colour karopos betweth euenmore. I haue that is hylent and glerous and good and indigell me- lancholye to come in the body. ¶ If the byrne have more of yellowe than of whyte that yellowe colour is euenmore whyte / but a litle more toward myke whyte than whyte whyte / as it is to be in þ. iii. age. before for ether more byrne that is yellowe and standet most of whyttenes / with a manner of byrthnes / going toward the byrnes kyndly / is betweth that flume and melancholye hath mastery in the body but melancholye most / and yf it have euen lyke moche of bothe that is to say of whyttenes & yellownes it betweth equalite of flume & of melancholye / what it hath yf he moche of bothe is to say / of whyttenes and of yellownes it is properly karopos. Thus spe- keth auctours / also they say that karopos is a mene colour betwene whyte and yellowe / as me is in this yonge barileys hede / that howe the they lo- ge lockes / whiche colour is called in latyn flavus anglice whyte yellowe or yellowe. ¶ The commentours upon this in this lanne place layeth thus colour karopos layeth he is flavus lyke a Camel hene / or els the onych stone And as I haue lerned of them / that haue had hemels / ether they be gray dun or els whyte graye for to be se at ouer eye that whyte graye & whyte ye- lowe be not all one / but take hede wher I sayde ryght now that that be. iii. names of karopos & underhand þ thogh all these. iii. colours þ is to say Alba & Glauca & Lactea & karopos / betokeneth feblenette of digestyon in the lyur / it not with standyng karopos is better colour than any of that o- ther. iii. ¶ And therfore auctours collect it Colorem grandiosum / anglice a torous colour / or els a joyfull colour. For it betweth that kynde is redy & dyspoled for to haue mastery and the bycrop of the batell that is to say in the fight betwene the kynde / and the sekene. And therfore yf it be so / þ a leke gians byrne apper lyke whyte / and after yellowe and after lactea / than karopos / or els whiche of all. iii. apper so that the last be karopos it is a very good token / for it betweth kynd is redy for to waite / ouer come the sekene though it so be / that colour karopos signyfyeth flume bylous and melan- cholye groue as I sayde well ere / and also take hede þ byrn whyte and yellowe byrne and myke whyte / as the. iii. chapytre. before speeth of / auctours more with a thynne body / or els thynnyll. But euenmore karopos is with a karopos is thynke body / and ther of byrnes auctours make no dyspucyon that is to say euer with a no byrthlyte betwene karopos / and whyte and yellowe and myke whyte / thynke both laue karopos is euenmore as I sayde with a thynke body / & that other with a thynner or a thynnyll. ¶ Than underhande for a rehole / that byrne kara- pos that is to say / whyte byrne / or yellowe byrne / or myke whyte byrne / or els whyte gray byrne with a thynke body / yf it haue a manner of byrnes a- bout whiche byrnes may not well be percepued / but yf thou put the hande

to the byrnall/ it sheweth a leucostume. ¶ In the leucostume compuly the  
 stomake swellith after mete/ & the eyen swellith and bareded & wared by-  
 myllhe & blodpille/ & the face all o/ & p feete be pousted by. Itt byrn lactea oz  
 karopos & thyrhe/ & with a maner of small grauell/ oz chefell in p bothu the-  
 weth Colica passio/ oz Allica passio. ¶ If it be colica passio/ than selet  
 he grette payne under p flauell. ¶ If it be Allica passio/ in p left syde. ¶ If  
 he haue both Colica passio & Allica passio/ than he suffred payne in bothe p pla-  
 ces. ¶ What is Colica passio/ thou hast apertly in ca. de albo Colore. Allica passio  
 in this maner is caused. ¶ Alion is a smal cope lypng in p body/ a lytel above  
 p reynes And in these Alions is sotyme gedryng a gadryng of euill humours  
 fleumatyke & viscosus/ & then bycause of viscolite/ & bycause of lytelnes/ of co-  
 let/ which shold bycause of his hete/ clenens & byghenes/ put a shoue & dely-  
 uer out away the drestes/ p leupnges/ the groundelopes/ & the euill viscosus  
 humours in p Alions bying out of the Alions/ p is to say/ p byle viscosus ma-  
 ter p gadreth to gyder in p Alions & clupreth there/ p is to say/ in p guttes  
 sufferth & stopperth them/ & bycause there of wynd in p Alions is gedreth for  
 they be neuer moze woute wynd/ & so is Alion stuffed & may not delyuer hym  
 selfe. ¶ And so bycause p the kynde is not of myght for to caste out p wynd &  
 p euill mater bytyme/ noz also kynde hete is noght myghty in his party/ for  
 to helpe to dessie it/ noz delyuer it out/ therfore it halderth hym styll & causeth  
 suche payne & angwylsh p the seke thynketh p one thryled hym w a wymbel  
 oz petfoure/ & on this wyle cometh Allica passio. And in this reuole/ & in all p  
 reuoles in this chapytre/ vnderstod karopos/ as I sayd in p reuole befor this  
 ¶ Item Vrinallia, dicitur Karopos. thyrhe/ lytell in quantite w sande oz chefel  
 in p bothu/ sheweth Calculu. ¶ Calculus is p stone in p bladder/ as Refre. The stone  
 is oz Refrelia is p stone in the reynes/ & lapis is taken for both. Vnderstod  
 p Calculus is gendred in.iii. maner wyle/ one may be of grette plente of sup-  
 fluxtes of some vnkynde humour/ oz humours p are gros & viscosus/ another  
 may be by strettenes of p waies of p byrn fro p raines to p bladder. The.iii. is gendred  
 whan kynde hete is not myghty/ for to overcome and ouermayster/ noz for .iii. maner  
 to caste oute that mater that gedred and gendreth and clupreth in p bladder wyle.  
 And whan it is so that ony of these causes/ oz some parte of them/ oz els all  
 causeth the generacyon ther of/ it is by reaso that suche humoure/ oz humours  
 as afoze sayd be with holden/ and maketh dwellyng in the bladder oz els in  
 the reynes longer than they shold/ whereby these partyes that are moost  
 moyse waysteth and cōsumeth away. ¶ And these partres that be moost terre-  
 stre and dyre bydeth styll/ and so that mater is indurat and exsiccat/ that is  
 to saye/ barded and dyed/ and so is gendred a harde grauell And than but p  
 kynde hete be of myght for to lase and delyuer it forth out of the body by ty-  
 mes that grauel gadreth and clotteth together/ and so groweth in to a stone  
 ¶ If the stone be in the reynes/ it causeth payne and angwylsh out of measure  
 And than oftentimes it fortuneth that his feete are colde and his slepyng  
 and herpyng feblished And the cause wherof is this for the renues by  
 whiche the spiritus and the myght of kynde hete passeth oute by to the extre-

Colica pas-  
 sio. Allica  
 passio.

Howe is p  
 Allica passio  
 gendred?

The stone

The stone  
 is gendred  
 by .iii. maner



## Liber secundus.

the genera  
cyon of Ali  
ca passio.

what thyn  
gis be hurt  
ful to the n  
y hath ysto  
ne.

how is y he  
de ache cau  
sed.

mytes of the body/as to the feete/to the handes/and to the eres/and so on to  
an other/be so constrycte and so astonyd and distemperd throught viciolece  
of the sekenes/that the myghtes of the spūs/and of the kynde hete may not  
haue theyr kynde cours to theyr instrumentes/for to do theyr office/as they  
holde. ¶ And also oftentymes cometh Alia passio ther with for comynly y  
Alions/che small guttes/that we call Alions/be pressed & chysted/because  
of the stone in the reynes & because the superfluytes of the fyrst digestyon/be  
with holde in the Alions And so causeth inflacion/puffng and swelling and  
grette payne. And this is also Alia passio And also in Calculo cometh other  
whyle Alia passio/as well as it doth in Nefretia/and by the same reason/  
as I said cyght now/ of Calculus & Nefretia you may se moze i Capitulo de albo colore  
To them that haue the stone/and are disposed to the stone/are noyns & hurt-  
ful all metes and dysnches that causeth gros humours. As Beef and porks  
and watercoule/and all maner bones/and scyed mete/and all maner salte  
metes/ & every maner cheys/and namely that we cal frellhe cheys/out take  
frellhe cheys that is of a gotte for that is calidus & humidus harde egges/  
nottes/stockyshe/and walnottes/pescoddis & every frute tyll it be melwd  
and leyne to the ful/thyche wyne/thyche water/thyche ale/and newe ale/  
feble ale/or goyng lowe/and long stondyng ale/or yf it be not well boyled  
ale/and all suche maner thyngis ¶ And all other y causeth viscus humours  
in mannes body/as puddyngeys/saucegis/and every mete/that is made of  
the ynwarde of the beeste/shepes ynwarde is best. Wyfe/and flour/and pa-  
cakes/and chert byede/and curll baken byede/and all suche. ¶ Also all  
those thynges that letteth digestion/As rayne water/snowe water/and  
water frute/moche crynge and moche dysnche/moche bathynge/moche wa-  
kyng/and excelle in lycherpe. ¶ Item byne Lactea/or karopos and thyche  
If the byne haue shewed hym so longe tyme in two waters/or in.iii.oz moo  
It sheweth ache and payne in the hede If it be so newly it is a token that  
the sekenesse is for to come And this is the philosophy or reason/whan fleu-  
ma hath longe tyme holden hym/and reigned in the body/that hete/that  
hath werken and wroughte in the fleum/nowe at the laste hath mayntred  
that fleum/and resolued hym/or els the moze parte of hym/in to humolites  
thyche and vapoures/whiche humolites styeth by to the Cerebrys And whan  
that they haue there none flue/it causeth ache and payne in the hede. ¶ Itē  
these popntes all wptnesseth Apocras In the laste ende of the fourth party-  
cle of his Apocras. ¶ Item byne Lactea/or alba/or karopos Inequall  
spysse and vnpure/that is to saye/moze thyche in some place/than in some/  
and truly/sheweth excelle and distemperans of kynde fleume without any  
feuer/and ther with euyl digestyon/and ache in the hede and namely in y  
hynner parte for there is the see of fleume And also with swellinge and  
crysinge aboute the lydes/and in the Chekes/with euyl taste in the mouth  
and moche spytynge/and dulness of the wyttes/slowness and slombry-  
ness/and grette heynesse And all these popntes are caused throughte resolu-  
cyon of humours gros/and rawe mater/of whiche mater cometh a humolite

And when that humors may not be consumed, nor maysted of kynde hete  
 because that kynde hete is but feble. It passeth the oth to dyuers parties of the  
 body, and aggreiveth and rotyeth them. And that humors spredeth aboute  
 in to the thyrd partye, & there causeth infection. And also that humors sp  
 eth by the Throat to the tounge and there it is threded aboute the tounge  
 and ther causeth swell and moche watyrage. And after it eth by the side  
 to the hede, and there causeth perye and ache. And so spredeth by the sen  
 ues aboute in the body, and bulleth and febleth the meynynge of the wy  
 tes, and the myghtes of the body, and of the soule, and so is all the body de  
 strempt. The whytnesse of the byrne, is because of feigdyte, and also  
 of fleume. For fleume is kyndely colde and wyte. And therefore he cau  
 seth whytnesse in the byrne. Whyte it is thers is because of humdyte, of  
 fleume. For humdyte thredeth the byrne as I sayde. In þ Chapter de albo  
 colore. And the byrne is unequal, it is because of perturbacion and distri  
 butyng of the humours in the body. As thou haste in the Chapter de signo  
 colore. And the body of the byrne is impure, that is to say, thers is and  
 trublyss. It sheweth defaute and feblenesse of kynde hete, and that he is not  
 of myght for to depure nor cleanse the body of the blode. Item byn a acten  
 of karopos thers and lytell in quantity, trubly and with small longe res  
 lucions, or with small greynes betwix a grettyng of evyll humours, &  
 colde in to the body for to make and gender apostume. Also the same byrne  
 sheweth the wombe flure, & why the byrne is lytell in the wombe flure, this  
 is the reason, in þ wombe flure, the body is moche depurid and restrayned  
 fro his spys and from his kynde hete, and of his myghtes. And because ther  
 of the .ii. digestyon, that is to say, Ege. is saynted, and hath not his kynde  
 myght for to drawe to hym humors, that is to say, humdyte, and because  
 therof are the humours but lytell and but fewe and feble, and so that is þ  
 reason why the byrne is lytel and the egestyon moche, and oft and therefore  
 sheweth Egestyon, that moche byrne made by myght, sheweth lytell Egestyon  
 & moche Egestyon lytell byrne. Egestyon is depurance by kynde, as In  
 gesticion is estryng. The foresayd exhalacions cometh of mater of fleume dis  
 tynge fro the floure to the Illions, or small guttes, of whiche Illions thou  
 hast afoze. And the sayde byrne is distourbed and trubly, is because of mi  
 ctyon and distemperance of the humours in the body. But take good hede that  
 though these foresayd byrnes be as who sayth a loone. Nevertheless this is  
 the difference betwix them, for that byrne that sheweth collectyon of ruy  
 matter drawyng toward apostume. As Theophilus sayth, sheweth a maner  
 of fatness, & so doth the byrne, when it sheweth the wombe flure, the  
 payne is in the wombe. And take good hede, that all these foresayd byrnes be  
 not to be understonde right, as I sayde right now in the fyfte rethor,  
 that is to say, not as in karopos, but in a moche as where. Item  
 understande that yf it loobe, that after the foresayd maner byrne, that sh  
 weth collectyons of apostume, come an byrne lytle and karopos, and moche  
 J.ii.

Hede ache  
 caused by  
 humors  
 scendyng  
 to þ byrne.

byrne ine  
 quall.

thick byrne

why þ byrne  
 is lytell  
 in wombe  
 flure.

Egestyon &  
 ingesticion.



mans bo-  
dy is dray-  
ed in .iii.  
partes.

The fyfte  
region.

The hya-  
ne.

Discrep-  
of the hya-  
ne.

Discrep-  
of the hya-  
ne.

Discrep-  
of the hya-  
ne.

in quarte the wiche soluceon that is to saye, bndryge and wedyge, and  
myndyngge a waye of that matter that wolde gather so in to a poynt.  
¶ And in these maner wyse maye bypne be sayde as I sayde in the Chappre  
of blacke coloure. ¶ Nowe vnderstande that mannes body is deuyded in  
to foure partes, whiche foure partes be called in this faculte. ¶ Quatuor  
regiones corporis humani Anglice, the foure regions of mannes body, or  
the foure pyncepsall places, or partes of mannes body. ¶ The fyfte re-  
gion, the fyfte place containeth Membra animata, the members of lyfe.  
And this region begynneth at the Epiglot, excludeth, and goyth vpwarde,  
the members of lyfe be these. ¶ The hyane, this water, & dura mater, and  
all the fenewes that be about those partes, whiche fenewes goyth to the  
spiritus of lyfe, and to the Cerebry for to geue wyte, and to make and  
fourme styngge and myght and vertus of the spiritus of lyfe. And by  
cause there of they are called Membra animata, anglice the members of lyfe.  
¶ Of all the members of lyfe Cerebryum the hyane is moost pyncepsall and  
moost noble, for this reason, for the soule, the whiche is lyfe too all the body.  
And ouer all the body, and in euery place and part of the body of man, as  
well in the lytell fyngers ende, as in any parte, or place of the body, hath  
his moost pyncepsall dominacion, and myght, and heuyn, of wykyngge in  
the hyane, more than in any other place, & that is by cause of imaginacy-  
on, reason and mynde, as thou shalt see here afterwarde. ¶ The Cerebry  
is thus dyscrep, in the boke of Anachonius, that is to saye, the boke of ex-  
poyson, of the Inner partes and members of mannes body. ¶ The Ce-  
rebry is a membre Calidum & Humidum per se, & moue be a frigidum & Hu-  
midum per accidens, rounde and nelthe and soft, and tender in his substan-  
ce, and whete in coloure, and dryged in to .iii. celles, or .iii. cawes. ¶ Ac-  
cidentally some saye that the Cerebry is frigidum & Humidum per se. And  
so all Philosophers agree, that it is Humidum. And for this reason it is Humi-  
dum, that it holde the wettest and the moost rebely caw and cerebry in pynceps  
and fourmes of wyte and of vnderstandyng, in descreyng, and Judy-  
gynge, and in beyng, and in aymentes and such other. ¶ These .iii. res-  
mes Calidum & Humidum, is declared fully, & truly the fyfte boke the foure  
Chappre. ¶ This stene per se, is a moue for to saye, as thou vnder-  
stande as pynceps in his stene hyde. ¶ Nowe this stene per accidens, it is  
declared in the fyfte boke, the foure Chappre. ¶ Expone in his comment  
upon Olyu sayth that Cerebryum is frigidum & Humidum per se, and for  
the same reason, it is nelthe and tender. ¶ His rounde, as condannus sayth  
in his comment, for to saye that it holde the most angles, that is to saye,  
no holes, nor cawes, in whiche maye superfluytes gather, for to cause and  
gender any schewes, or defautes. And also for the more rounde ethenge in





officii epi-  
gloti.

[illegible]

but sickness of brule/that is to say of þ through goll/ as þ sanctours of And  
thomys teacheth this sickness is forþme caused of blode/ somtyme of Color/ forþ  
me of Fleume/ & forþme through melancoly. ¶ If it be bycause of excess of blode  
than þ byn sheweth hi rede. If it be of Coloz citrine or citrinyshe it sheweth  
citrine. If it be by cause of Fleume. it is more white/ or whityshe. If it be thow  
excess of melancolye bloy she/ or blakyshe the *Isofagus*. is the trowth by hym pas  
seth the fode in to the stomake. It begynneth at the rote of the tounge in the  
throte/ and endeth at the mouthe of the stomake. And it is holwe and playn  
withyn/ that the fode sholde not be letted. And it is *Frigidus* & *siccus* in complex  
eyon *Trachearteria* the trachearterie/ or els trachil other inglyshe synde ¶ none  
therfoze/ it is a membre *Frigidus* & *siccus*. in complexyō/ hole and playne lyyng  
on the trowth bytwene the trowth and the krowpe begynnynge in the ne  
ther ende of the krowpe/ as sheweth som. But as Galienus sayeth his begyn  
nyng is on the rote/ that is to say/ in the nether ende of the tounge lyyng  
on the trowth bytwene the trowth and the krowpe. ¶ And this is his office  
he draweth and bereth ayze and spys to the lungos/ why it is hole is by cau  
se that the ayze may esely outet and passe therby/ it is playne/ by cause that  
the voyce shold not be letted in spekyng lyke as *Isofagus* is hole and playn  
that the fode sholde no lettynge have in swolowynge ther of. ¶ And take hede  
that whan one eteth the trachearterie shetteth. And *Isofagus*. Anglice the  
trowth openeth hym. whan one speketh *Isofagus* closeth and *Trachearterie*. ope  
neth. And þ is the cause/ that whā one eteth in spekyng somtyme a croome of  
bryde entreth the trachearterie/ and may not away/ but thow we cowlfynge/  
or smytynge bytwene the shulders. By thos trachearterie cometh ayze to the  
lunges/ and fro the lunges to the herte *Trachearteria* is as moche for to saye/ as  
arterie drawynge and ledynge the spys of eyze. ¶ The space bytwene *Trache*  
*arteria* & *Isofagus*. is called *Ismon* in whiche space are gadzeth and gendzeth bu  
mours that rozneth in to apostume that is called *Squinancia* the squinancie som  
tyme gadzeth in that same place. And somtyme withoute that same place.  
And whan it is onely within/ or els bothe within and withoute/ it is pro  
perly *Squinancia*. But whan it is onely withoute than it is properly *sinancia*. The  
*Synacre*/ thus sheweth Galienus in his boke of *Anatomis*/ & bothe of these  
sykenesses are called *Ismonia*. *Canals*. *Pulmonis* & *Pistula*. *Pulmonis*. Be all one Anglice  
the lungue pipus as I sayde in the chapytre of bloo coloze Pulmo the lunges  
is a membre softe and tendre *Frigidus* & *humidus*/ in complexyon/ haupnge .iii.  
wynges and .iii. lappates and .ii. meynnges/ þ is to say/ .ii. maner of ster  
ynges and it is softe and tendre by cause it sholde be the more able and apte  
to take and receue eyze/ also it semeth well that they be colde and moche/ for  
ther are wont to bryde colde apostumes/ as *Pulmonia* & *pipulmonia* as I sayde in the lunges  
synte chapytre de luyde coloze. Also it is wynged that it sholde þ better geue  
eyze and colynge to the herte. ¶ It is meynge in .ii. maner wyse as is the  
herte/ that is to say. In closynge and openynge in closynge he deliuereth  
and casseth fro hym superfluetes/ and in openynge/ he draweth eyze to re  
fresh the herte/ and for to make and tempze the herte of the herte. ¶ Cor.

sickness of  
through

Isofagus

trache arte  
ria

Squinancia

sinancia

the lunges



## Liber secundus.

the herte is pyncepal of all the spyrтуall. wherfore vnderstande that  
foure membes in man be moſte pyncepal of all membes and lymes in man  
f. Cerebru Cor Epar & Teſticut. For withoute them may no man kynde ſtande

**The .iiii.  
pyncepal  
membres of  
man.**

nor bz and alſo if it fortune any of them foute to be hurt or perſhede man  
lyueth not the herte hath the qualites of fyre that is to ſay it is calidus &  
ſiccus and it is ſhape lyke the flame of fyre or els lyke a pere. And with  
a ſadde body bode aboue and narowe bynethe and hath two maner of me-  
uyngges and it is calidus & ſiccus / for it is well and grounde of all kynde

**As ſonne  
wekyd on  
the erthe ſo  
wekyd the  
hert in the  
body.**

here in mannes body. And therfore lyke as the ſonne worketh kyndely  
here in all the creatures of the world. On the ſame wyſe doth the hert in  
the body of man it is formed lyke a flame of fyre or els lyke a pere. Contra  
thow mayſt ſaye a pere is narowe aboue & bode bynethe but Cor is contrary  
wherfore vnderstande that man is called. *Arbor uerſa* anglice a treer toynd vp  
ſo downe for he hath all his rootes & his ſpyngges downe warde for all  
ſenewys of ſ body haue therz begynnyng & her ſpynggyng & her growyng  
fro the bryne / all the bones at the hede panne / all the arteries at the herte  
and all the waynes at the lyuer as thou haſt in capitulo de humido colore. And  
ſo the hert conſormeth them to the dyſpoſycon of kynde / and that is the  
cauſe why it is ſo narowe aboue and bode beneth. And therfore grekes  
call men *Antropos* that is to ſay. *Arbor euersa*. Alſo the hert is ſadde in hym  
ſelf that he ſould not lyghtly be deſolued bycauſe of his herte alſo he is euer  
more meuyng in .ii. maner wyſe that is to ſay in oppenyng & cloſyng con-  
tynually in oppenyng for to drawe to hym eyre to ſ tempyng and refreſ-  
hyng of his herte in Cloſyng to take and to do away and purg hym ſelfe of

**The place  
of the hert**

euell humours & fro ſuperfluytes of euyl humours. Alſo vnderſtand that ſ  
herte properly lyeth in the lyfte ſyde of man vnder the rybbes / and therfore  
the ryght ſyde hath more kynde hert ſrome the herte than hath the lefte  
ſyde for the herte openeth hym euer more to the ryght ſyde. And alſo by rea-  
ſon that Epar lyeth more on the ryght ſyde than on the lefte ſyde as I ſayde

**The cauſe  
why man  
is hotter in  
ſ ryght ſy-  
de than in  
ſ lyfte ſyde**

in the ſpyſte boke the .ii. chapitre. And this is the whyſolophye why that  
why man the ryght ſyde of a man is more warme and more abul to ſterpyng & meuyng  
is hotter in and wechyng than is the lefte ſyde *Diaphragma* is the mydryl and it is called  
ſ ryght ſy- alſo *mappa Ventris* the bely bozde clothe and *mappa ſpericualis* the ſpyrtual  
de than in clothe for the ſpyrtuall membes lyeth therein ryght as ſ bozde clothe be-  
ſ lyfte ſyde teth ſ lyeth thereon it is ſayd *Diaphragma* of this wyſe *dis* & of this word

*beant the  
hert ſpawle to  
tho in myght  
ſo is the hert  
in the*

*Pragma* ſ is to ſay bykyng downyng & depyng. For it depyteth & depyteth &  
bereteth ſpyrtuals fro ſ other membes that be vnderneath them that is to  
ſay the paunche and the guttes. And therfore it is ſtrauth and taught and  
caynred oute as it were a reſtute of clothe or a ſkynne ryed all aboute the  
ſydes of a body *Diaphragma* is *frigidus & ſiccus* as ſom ſaye. And ſom ſaye it is *ri-  
gidus & humidus*. The thyrde regacyon laſteth fro *Diaphragma* excluſyſ to the  
ceynes & to the lowyng excluſyſ the lowynges be ſ nethermoſt places down  
warde as the ches the hyppes and the buttoches *Lumbi* are *Calidi & ſucci*  
ſ capnes are *frigidus & ſiccus* ſomtyme *Lumbi* gre take for the ceynes. And alſo

for þe places about the nether ende/ and this region containeth mēbra nutri-  
ticia/ þe mēbra nutritia are these. Esophagus, stomachus, splen, pel,  
Intestina, Colon, & Cæca. Esophagus is the principall member of all the nutritives/ & co-  
lonum is principall of the nutritives of lyfe. Cæca is principall of the nutritives  
and Venes is principall of the generatives. Some say Cæca are þe prin-  
cipal of þe generatives. Esophagus is a member here & moyste in complexion softe &  
tender and putput in coloure/ hole within and bagging without/ & haupng  
bit wynges/ of eis. vii. lappatis/ and it is hote and moyste/ for that it holde  
be of good digestyon/ for þe coldest þe lyue is/ the worst digestyon is in þe ly-  
uer/ and þe moyste lyfe shall the man be of. Also it is softe & nesthe & putput in  
coloure moiste towards blade/ for it is non other but massa sanguinis/ as I  
sayd in the fyrste boke the .i. ca. Also it is hole within & it is bagging and  
lapped/ & it holde þe moyste lightly touche þe stomach to his lappatis. Stoma-  
chus is þe stomach of man/ as I sayd is þe maw of every other best. Stomachus  
is colde and drye in complexion rounde & evenlong/ rough within & sene wy-  
noug/ and fleshy by nethe/ & haupng. ii. moyses. One about oppenyng to  
warde the herte/ and another by nethe oppenyng to warde the lyuer. Also it is  
colde and drye. by cause þe it holde be of good retencyon/ that is to say/ to hold  
well & kepe well together þe/ & cometh ther in for those qualyres are kyndely  
retencyon/ & is to say/ holdyng & byndyng. Also it is wolly and rough for this  
same reason/ also it is rounde and evenlonge bycause it holde be the moyste  
able for to receyue plente of fode. Also it is seneuous above/ & it holde be of  
good appetyte and sharpe/ it is Carnous by nethe/ bycause it shold the better  
desyre/ when it cometh in to the botum of the stomach/ also the stomach is  
Oppenyng bywarde to the herte and downewarde to the lyuer/ by cause þe  
he may take sufficient digestyon/ thowhe benefytes of ther kynde hete/ wher  
the fode is receyued in to the stomach/ ther it is apetty decocte/ than kynde  
sendeth it forth to the lyuer/ by bynes that are called Viscerale & than þe  
that is pure/ is agayne ther decocte & desyred. Some sayth that stomachus  
is colde & drye naturaliter. & some sayth þe it is colde naturaliter & hote acci-  
dentaliter/ and some sayth that it is colde and drye per se. But it is hote and  
moyste per accidens/ & they sayth soth that so sayth. Understad þe all these  
iii. wordis are alone for to say/ naturaliter proprie & p. se. i. kyndely properly  
and of his owne kynd. i. by way of kynd of complexion of þe elemētes & þe which  
it is detemest by. And these. iii. wordis are alone to say accidentaliter & accidens  
& improprie. i. improperly/ & by other reasons or causes/ & by other chaunces than  
of hymself/ or of his owne kynd/ as I have sayd of tēpme before verbi gratia. The stomach  
is. se by exāple. The stomach is colde. i. p. se of his owne kynd/ but he hath þe  
lyuer even under hi/ in so moch þe he is nere closed in hi/ as a pot over þe fyre/  
& þe groweth hete to him fro beneath/ & he hath þe herte above hi/ not cut above  
him/ but sodele moze on þe left syde so þe þe herte groweth hym hete fro above/ &  
so through byffices of the both. i. through gyles of þe herte above/ & of þe lyuer  
beneathe/ þe stomach hath his hete & his myght/ for to worke & desyre þe fode.  
And so it seemeth þe þe stomach is hote per accidens & not per se. The myght as I sayd

the mēbra  
nutritive.

The lyuer.

The stom-  
ach.

Natural-  
iter proprie  
& per se.

per accidens

The stom-  
ach is cold &  
se.



## Liber secundus.

Lienus sayth þ it is an euenslong member lpyng towards the left syde. It is  
 called spleen of this word of laten splenders anglice shynynge & bright. And  
 it is called so p cōtrariū anglice by þ cōtrariū for it is nothe shynynge nor  
 bright but ever more swarte & dymme blacke. It is betwene bothe & this  
 is þ philosophie for it hath muche of þ kynde of þ erthe for erthe is hynbelg  
 blacke. & therefore spleen is garyncypall place of melancolye. for melancolye  
 regneth principally in þ spī. & it is the col þ galle. wherfore vnderstande it  
 longer on þ lyuer as it were a then tyme as a bladder. & it is wether cald  
 to behe for þ cause it is so teder. & this tyme is called Cista fellis. or Cistis  
 fellis And þ wete mater þ is wīn this cista. or tyme is called fell. it is bothe  
 & dymme. Intestina. Intestina are of tyme taken for þ tyme. But Intestina  
 is pperly every maner gutte in man in best whyle they are in þ body. whyle  
 they are out of þ body. than are they called Extra Intestina. they be cold and  
 moyste. Of all þ other guttes in man. thou hast i. iii. ca. Circa & Sifac are  
 ii. small webbes. ii. small tymes lapping þ lyuer as I sayd in þ ca. de albo  
 colore. The qualites of Circa & Sifac I have notrede. Also ther is another  
 webbe or a tyme in whiche all þ tiones & all þ guttes. save onely logas  
 cyon are closed in. & this tyme calleth Calterus in his boke of Anathomia  
 Epigostomum. this Epigostomum somtyme byeth & than þ tiones  
 .i. some of þ small coppes falle downe in to tress. i. þ baloke coddess. & suche  
 oftentymes are called byost coddess as the plectoziche. Plectoziche & pin  
 guts be al one in this purpose. they are fatte & coziens. Ostrū & bursa testicu  
 lozū be all one. anglice þ baloke purs or þ ballok coddess. In þ. iii. regis  
 of mānes body be conteyned the members generatruis. i. Rens, Lunis, Viscerū  
 Ostrū, Testiculi, Virga virilis, Matrix, & testiculi maris, Vulus Tēigo vulue. Rens. what re-  
 nes be thou hast in þ ca. of whyle coloz. Ostrū I sayd right now afore.  
 Testica þ bladder is a member lyke a skynne coude & hoole. lyke an byrnail.  
 in to this vesle or bladder falleth þ byrn downe fro þ rapnes by. ii. small wō-  
 pes as it were. ii. sigle byrnes. which be called bychides. or els bychides po-  
 ti. as I sayd. i. ii. ca. Testica is cold & dry which be schenes of þ vesle. thou  
 haste in þ tress bothe þ. iii. ca. Of Ostrū I said right now. Testiculi þ ballok  
 bones be hote & dymme. Virga virilis. þ mānes yerde is cold & dry. Matrix the  
 mother & testiculi maris. i. þ mother ballok bones. it is expessed in ca. de  
 lundo colore vulue. is þ wōbe gate of womē. it is calde & moyste. Tēigo is  
 called paries vulue. or þ wōbe gate walle. or els lingua vulue. an. þ wōbe  
 gate tange. vnderstāde þ þ other tymes of mā. i. þ armes & þ ches. & þ leg-  
 ges. be but as bowes & byches of a tree. & þ hede here is þ rote of þ body. for  
 as I sayd man. is called Arbor euēta. a tree cōnyed by þ is dohane. And as  
 he hede for thet. iii. sayd regions of þ body. be answerynge to. iii. regions of  
 þ byrn. The tress region of þ byrn is called Circulus byrne. & cyrcle of the  
 byrn. is þ ouer pte of þ byrn. & þ betwēth & cōteth euermore þ disposicio of þ  
 members of lyfe & of her place. i. of þ hede. as thou shalt see i. þ. iii. boke þ. ii. ca.  
 The. ii. regis of þ byrn is þ place nīc & cerle dōtwarde. i. þ place betwene  
 þ cerle & þ myddell of þ byrn. and þ is necessarye all one wō p cerle. by this

**Fel:**

**cista fellis**

**Intestina.**

**extra testi-  
na.**

**Epigostoma  
tuncion.**

**Plectoziche**

**Ostrum.**

**the members  
necrotypes**

**Testica. i. þ  
bladder.**

**ther be. iii.  
regions in þ  
byrne.**

**i. region.**

**ii. region.**

regione by this place of the hyne is encreased knowe the dispositione & state of  
the spiales of these places for if it be dethe & drume as theche & trouble  
in parte or in all It sheweth sickness of the spiales caused of superfluitie of  
cruell humors dytes onely It is byn lesul of smal greynes It sheweth a kind  
of distill & empine & collectio of cruell mater about the spiales And it is poynted  
by straphines as the byn & shote wynde. The small members haue much of  
eye to the feeding & therefore kindly they openeth & seeth out eye and the spial  
dweth in to them eye & that is reason whye they be called spiales in- region  
bers And therefore auctours call this. ii. regio Corpus aceti anglie appell  
body of regio spialis & small place. The. iii. regio is the myddes of the byne  
and it serueth for the members nutritifs for if it seme nebulous. i. thicke and  
cokkyllie & clowdyllie & thychyllie It sheweth sickness & cruell dispositione  
of the nutritifs as wombe ache Induratio feble digestio & suche other like  
nise as cometh by cause of reflectio of the stomake & of the interualis. The. iiii.  
regio of the byn is the greinde of the byn. i. the nether parte thereof & that regio  
encreased telleth the disposition of the members generatifs. i. of the nether regio  
of the body for if it be drye & thicke & trouble & gruely it sheweth distill  
cancer & vnhelth in the generatifs as it is in the nestise & in the lythalye  
in the stranguere & in other sickness of the bladder & on the reynes & in the lo  
wyns And if thou take good hede of these. iiii. fowrd regions of the byn an  
sweryng to the. iiii. parties of manes body as reioles have sayd & as reioles  
the foloweth wote dowte when thou seest an hyne thou shalt beery see &  
knowe where the sickness in the body of man is and wherof it is caused.

the. iii. re-

gion of the  
byne.

the. iiii. re-

gion of the  
byne.

here begynt

nerth pall &

subpal colo

ure of byn

black & blue

colours morose

not yellow

cause of dig.

Explicit septima ca. de colore Karopos. Incipit octaua ca. de colore pallido & de colore subpallido.

After that we haue treated of colours in the byn & signyfeth mortifica-  
tio as blacke colours & blue colours And also of colours & signyfeth  
pauca of digestio as whyte colour / yelow colour / myke whyte colour &  
karopos colour. Now pursue we forth of colours & signyfeth begynnynge  
of digestio. i. pale colour & palyshe colour subletysne colour as all auctours  
of this faculte speeth & teacheth for alba byna. glaura. & lactea. & karopos  
of whiche it is sayd afoze sheweth wanysheynge & sayng off digestion but  
karopos sheweth lesse / Pallida & subpallida sheweth begynnynge of digestio  
of humours / Citrina & subcitrina mene digestio kusa & subkusa kuba & sub-  
kuba sheweth coplet digestio kuberida & subkuberida sheweth excess of di-  
gestio Inopos & kyanos sheweth distillio of digestio Riger & lunda & liri & remissio  
dis sheweth mortificatio & aduicio of digestio & al vbi infectio & remissio. in  
cio. i. depnele in colours Now in this wyse teacheth auctours for to knowe pale howe is pall  
colour or palyshe colour in the byne I suppose a lytell quantyte of neres galle colour kno-  
wee menged w a good quantyte of water than that colour that cometh of wen.  
bothe is pallida or subpallida anglie pale or palyshe ryght so when a ly pallida &  
pell of colour is mixt with a good portyon of fleume than is the colour in byn subpallida  
pale or palyshe and so is Pallidus color or subpallidus color in the byne cur be encrea-  
more caused of color and of fleume But vnderstande that nother the qualities re-  
gedyeth of that one humoure nor of that other humoure in the byn that is to say of color &  
fleume.

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion

Intencion



**Liber**      **Secundus.**

neither of coler nor of fleume is not comprehended nor understode of vs but  
 onely by estymaciō. I. by getting sight as one taketh a certayn of wyne & me-  
 geth it w<sup>th</sup> a good poze of water & y<sup>e</sup> seeth not a th<sup>ing</sup> the we y<sup>e</sup> y<sup>e</sup> compr<sup>ess</sup>ed  
 is cur take knowest neither y<sup>e</sup> qualyte of y<sup>e</sup> one nor of y<sup>e</sup> other but by gette And therfore  
 by estimaci on. were not y<sup>e</sup> lytell qualyte of coloz y<sup>e</sup> caused as I sayd y<sup>e</sup> palynesse in y<sup>e</sup> byrne  
 this for a rewele y<sup>e</sup> y<sup>e</sup> of one make an byrn tobyte or pelowte or moche tobyte  
 or katopos & after y<sup>e</sup> come a pall byrn It is a bette token y<sup>e</sup> than begynneth  
 Token of kynde for to myght byrn self for to worke and spred and shatter the curill be-  
 recouering of kynde. mouthe and spylle coloz for he is more supple and more able for to be spe-  
 cial Wyna pallida or Subpallida throughout spylle that is to saye our al  
 thicke sheweth a feuer Cotidiana caused of a kynde fleume. Why it is  
 temple and feyne in colour is for this reason for every pall colour may well  
 be sayd Remysse and that is by cause of the coldnesse of fleume. Why it is  
 spylle is by cause of humydyte of fleume for fleume is colde and moyste and  
 cur more humydyte thycheth the byrne kyndely what is kynd fleume and  
 how many spices of fleume ther be. I haue haue sayd in y<sup>e</sup> Chappre de glau-  
 coloz adust co coloz. Item byrne pallida or subpallida throughout thynne and with  
 a maner of grenyssh sheweth lordshyp of Coloz adust anglice a bynde co-  
 loz aduste is bynte I Coloz adust is thus moche for to saye a coloz disteped  
 of bynde here. Than is this rewele thus moche for to saye when the byrn  
 sheweth so it sheweth a feuer whiche feuer is caused throughe excelle of me-  
 lancolpe innaturalis whiche melancolpe innatural is caused throughe adu-  
 syon of coloz and this is the reason for coloz aduste is less hote and dryer  
 than is naturall Coloz and therfore by reason of his feyne here he maketh  
 the byrne pall and by cause of this he maketh the byrne thynne And ther-  
 fore understode y<sup>e</sup> Colecta adusta a melancolia innaturalis or a bynt coler &  
 all bynde melancolpe to be alone and ryght as coloz adusta a melancolia  
 innaturalis that are all one maketh the byrn pall and thynne & w<sup>th</sup> a maner  
 of grenyssh Ryght so sanguis adustus maketh y<sup>e</sup> byrn tobyte & thynne w<sup>th</sup> a  
 maner of rudynes or redynenes And fleuma adustum maketh y<sup>e</sup> byrn menely  
 thicke w<sup>th</sup> a whytene & take good hede to these poyntes that be sayd in this  
 rewele & in other reweles y<sup>e</sup> foloweth understad as sheweth Johanne I his  
 boke of sinagogis I y<sup>e</sup> lra. That there be. iiii. maner of colozs. colera rubra. co-  
 lera citrina. colera nigra. & coloz. viridis. I. a rede coloz / a citrine coloz / a  
 blake coloz / & a grene coloz. Colera rubra & colera naturalis be all one. Coloz  
 naturalis is kyndely rede & clere pure in hiself & he is not ouercom nor mixt  
 w<sup>th</sup> none other humour & therfore he is called coloz naturalis & kynde coloz  
 Coloz Citrine stādeth by coloz rubra & by fleume but more by coloz rubra thā  
 by fleume & this spice of coler is less noyous & less hurtful of al colozs & this  
 coloz is called also Coloz vitulina & coloz vitulyn for it is most lyke y<sup>e</sup> coloz  
 of y<sup>e</sup> polke of an egge vitellus is lyke y<sup>e</sup> polke of an egge Coloz nigra is in  
 ii. maner wyse one is caused throughe excelle of Melancolpe & it is blake  
 lyke dyestis of blode & this maner of coloz is pperly coloz nigra for it is &

Deth most by blacke humours / & is to say by mplantolie. & it is ferre worse than  
 Colours citrina / for it is frigidus and Siccus as the humours is that he hath  
 most of / this .ii. spere of blacke colour / is caused through grete adustion of  
 color / & it is ferre worse & more nery than is & other colour / for it is ouer  
 moche hote & drye. And that black colour is called Nigrum innaturalis an-  
 glice a vnynde color / but & other maner of blacke color is called colour  
 nigrum naturale anglice a kynde blacke color. ¶ Colours viridis / is also in  
 two maner wyse / the fyrst is called Colours Passina anglice a colour passyn  
 And it is called so of an herbe / & that is called in latyn Passina & also Passu-  
 bina anglice passyn of hound / for a colour passyn is grene & bitter / as &  
 herbe is. And this colour is gedred comely in the stomake / in them & be wont  
 for to be herbes / whiche be ouer moche hote in coplexion / as cresses poretys  
 leches gallyn / & onpous and such maner hote thynges / for by reason of &  
 greenes and coloures / it happeneth often tymes that colour taketh sharpe-  
 nes and coloures and greenes togethyr it is also dystempred and out of his  
 owne kynde / & ther after it sheweth hi in & byngsalien / sayeth & Colours Pass-  
 syn is gedred of a colour vitellyn / for when color vitellyn is grete salt and  
 brenth / then that same adustion causeth a blacknes whiche blacknes for  
 as moche as it is mixte with citrynes / it causeth a greennes and ther after  
 appereth the byrne. ¶ Another maner ther is of grene color that is grene as  
 rust of brass or of copet. And that is caused through moche more adustion of  
 color Passyn / as when a colour passyn is so hugely or grete aduste / that  
 his humidite / salte / wasted & fordon / the this colour is called Colours Erugino-  
 sa anglice a rusty color / & this colour byteth & freteth as veneme / & it is worse  
 of all colours whetsoe whan an byrn sheweth hym so suche colour & syke ma-  
 shaperh not deth by woe of kynde. ¶ It byrn Passida / or Subpassida menely  
 shyn sheweth a colidian caused of fleume acetosus fleuma acetosa & fleumum  
 acutib. both of one anglice an & gre fleume or a soure fleume. ¶ It byrna Passi-  
 lida / or Subpassida is a menely thicke body sheweth fleumaticu sanu anglice a  
 hole fleumlike vntill this reuole in this wyse / byrn pale or palidhe & mene-  
 ly thicke sheweth losidhe of fleum natural or a kynde fleume about any reher.  
 ¶ It yf it be lost one be a waied .i. yll disposed in & body through lekenes / & his  
 byrn shew him / alba or glauca lactea or kazopos / & so after / or & nixt after .i. &  
 nixt byrn after pale or palidhe / it is a good tokē / for it sheweth & kynde hete  
 beyneth for to ryle a comagayn / & take agayn his might & working toward  
 digestio / & anmyfter & sykes / & the self for to be maysters & reuolours & bo-  
 dyther for to haue more declarig of this reuole / & also of al reuols & are sayd  
 & shal be sayd vntilland one poynt & is nedeful in this facule .i. / & ther is .ii.  
 maner of Judgimētis byrn / one is called Judiciu simplex .i. a vncertayn iug-  
 mēt as whan one deserneth an byrn / only as & byrn semeth to hi for & time be-  
 uigno maner of regarde to other circūstances / another maner of iudgimēt is  
 in byrn & is called iugmēt haug regard & consideraciō toward mani poyntes  
 & cōdiciōs / & yf & wille iuge an byrn thou most haue regarde & cōsideraciō  
 on to the state of the person that made the byrne / fyrst thou most regarde

black color  
innatural

color pass-  
sina;

color pass-  
sine.

a soure fleu-  
me.

tokē of re-  
couerig of  
kynde

ther is .ii.  
maner iug-  
mēt i byrn

a iugment  
certayn



## Liber secundus.

consider what state the person was in at the tyme of making of the urine  
 a mā most byrne also what state he was in the day afore of the nyth afore also thou  
 consider the moost have consideration to his myghtes / to his age / and to his complex-  
 state age & tyme and also what his byrne was that he made next afore that byrne and  
 myght of p to suche other poyntes and condicions and this is the Judging is enormo-  
 pld p made certayne and of more in the Werthe gratia / yf it be so that the byrne of a bo-  
 the byrne. by that is dyscolored shewe hym pale / or palid. And yf his byrne before that  
 byrne were alba / or glauca / or lactea / or hatopell. It sheweth that kynde hete  
 encreaseth and recovereth and taketh his myghtes agayne. And digestyon be-  
 gynneth to strengthe and also yf the sayd byrne shewe hym not as in maner  
 about sayd it sheweth cleere contrary / that is to say menyng of the myghtes  
 and feblefshynge of digestyō. ¶ Also Urina rufa / Rubra / or eis Rubra  
 in a hote body and also in a hote mater sheweth digestyon complet. But in  
 a body that is colde of complexyon. And also in a colde mater it sheweth ex-  
 cess of digestyon.

¶ Also the same byrne that sheweth mene diges-  
 tyon in a hote body / the same byrne sheweth complet digestyon in a colde bo-  
 dy. ¶ Also whan an byrne sheweth hym fyfte thyns or thynnyng / & after  
 warde ther come an byrn somdel more miste and trouble therin was before  
 be it neuer so lytell / it is a betay toke and sygne of begynnyng of digestyō

how nubes on a yf it be so p afterward ther appere Rubes or eis Eneoymia / it sheweth  
 eneoymia good digestyon / or eis mene digestyon / and the reason is this / for fyft whā  
 & ipostasis kynde begynneth for to worke in to the humours kynde hete is but lytel and  
 be gēderyd feble / wherfore kynde hete may not yett overcome & comprehend p mater fully  
 and therfore some of the humours passeth with the byrne. And for as moche  
 as kynde hete is yet but lytell / it worketh but lytell in the byrn / afterward  
 by pcell of more tyme whā kynd hete hath gadreth more myght to hym gen-  
 eraleth & distrogeth more & maistret more p humours / whā his couer is p  
 byrne / than kynde hete comprehendeth & aggregeth to hym / the moistnes p  
 worketh in to the byrne. for p is the kynde of hete for to aggregen / p is to  
 say for together moistnes to hym / & whā it is so gathered the sheweth in p  
 byrne Rubes / or eis Eneoymia / yf kynde hete be but lytell & feble and more  
 bentolte in the body it sheweth Rubes / yf p hete be more & bentolte less it  
 sheweth Eneoymia & afterward whā kynd hete is more myght / p is to say  
 whā kynd hete hath more supple & maysted p mater thā appereth Ipostasis  
 & that is token that kynd hath fought & hath gotten p mater p of myght  
 for to overcome p element & is at his abone / & therof sayd Placoy in p. iij. bōke.  
 i. ca. of Etimologia it behoueth bi p shal be a phisic for to knowe thyn-  
 ges p be passe / & also thyns p be pilt / & to se thyns p are docten to come furth  
 of Rubes Eneoymia & Ipostasis yow may se in p. i. bōke p. iij. in p. iij. bōke  
 in ther one pper ca. For byrn pale or subpale then & cleere in a colde mater  
 or in a colde feuer is good tokene & namly to have appetite & with myght of  
 kynd it sheweth bredth of ardraue and p midys in p right Placoy whā p  
 byrn is pale or palid is by cause of p feigiblen of the mater & that p myght  
 of kynde is all for consumed aboute the maystynge of that colde mater

how nubes  
 eneoymia  
 & ipostasis  
 be gēderyd

Rubes.  
 eneoymia.

Ipostasi.

What is the matter of the spleen? In the liver the humors are colored white by the spleen is thin and clear by cause of complexion and crudity: that is to say / rawness of the matter. And therefore when the spleen is so corrupted and corrupted on this wise he is not of might to have his purpose for to purge the matter / nor for to de-lytch it out by bleeding at the nose nor by sweating nor by none other manner of purgation he doeth the best that he may and laboureth by lytell and lytell for to help himselfe / and for to cast out and drive out the matter from the members: that he moste noble and moste worthy to those members he be both master and lord noble and namely to the right Epicondrie for there is more virtue and more might of drawing then is in the left Epicondrie for it is more next to the liver. And therefore the matter by the spleen with such signes sheweth bleeding of apoplexie on this wise. And if there be no good signes and tokens / and namely if the spleen be wonderfule / and have no manner of appetite then Judge rather death than life. ¶ If the spleen be pale or subpale frothy above with a manner of dynnes or bloyness as though allbes were dyed in the spleen: And if there with the spleen be lytell in quantity / and that he that maketh that spleen have not the wombe flure / it sheweth Pestilence the pestilence / sometimes the spleen sheweth hym in such manner nerhand in the wombe flure. And that is by cause of perturbation / that is to say / dyscombing of the humors in the body / and also by cause that there cometh lytell humidity of the liver for it passeth away with the Egestion / but than the spleen is not so frothy / nor so allbe as it is in the pestilence why the spleen is pale or pallid is by cause of febleness of the spleen here aboute the Nutritifs / the nutritifs kindly have compassion of the spirytuals / and therefore when the spirytuals are lyke the Nutritifs are kindly desied and greatly dysolat / why it is spumous / that is to say frothy is by cause of the passion of the lunges / which frothiness in the lunges may be caused in .iii. manner wyle / as by cause of gretemotion of the lunges. ¶ And by cause of dyscepcion / that is to say bloynng and clyng of the lunges / and also by cause of ventosity about the lunges ¶ The dynnes / or bloynness sheweth infection of the spirytuals / and also of the liver / which infection is caused of evil matter threke & venomous which cometh by venia Concaus to the liver and there envenymeth the blood and bulleth the spirytes / why the spleen is cynerous / that is to say allbe is by reason of melting and wasting of the lunges / for humors of which I sayde in the next chap. are before is of colour moche toward allbeys what it is so that the humors be moche Agitat and moved and stirred in the vessels / that is to say in the baynes of the body then they taketh and bereith with them those pouthers / those allbes that wher cleueth in the vessels which pouthers and allbes / see nothyng / but as I sayde resolucons and meltinge and wastynge away of the lunges why the spleen is lytell in quantity is by cause of consumption of the substantiall humidity of the Inner members of the body. ¶ For the substantiall humidity of the Inner members of the body draweth them to the lunges and that that is stille in the members by the dyscepcion and dyscepcion of the liver / dyeth by

there is more drawyng to the right side than to the left side.

the nutritifs have compassion of the spirytuals.

frothy by infection of the spirytuals.

allbe resolucons



## Liber secundus.

**¶ feuer ety-  
ke.**

**tokens of ¶  
feuer etyke**

**seven ma-  
ner of cau-  
ses of ly-  
te nes of ¶  
lypne**

**lytelnes of  
lypnei an  
agus or i a  
feuer conty-  
nual is a  
lygne of  
de the.**

**ther be. vii.  
causes that  
causet ¶ v-  
lypne to be  
moche.**

and wasteth it away / and that is the reason why that lytell bypne cometh to  
of ¶ body. And vnderstande that cybillica / or cybilla / of which I sayde  
suffreth in the chappere of blac colour / is but a lefe feuer wastynge and  
destroynge the body / and it is a feuer that is not moche felt / nor moche per-  
ceyued / though it consume greteyly within the body / and the reason why ¶  
feuer is but lytell apereyued outwarde / is by cause that it holdeth hym in  
the sadde members / that is to say / in the bones / and in those members  
that are bonny and cher for the passyng of those members be not so moche felt  
as passyngs of other members be / that is by reason that those members be  
more sadde and haue more quantyte and heftynesse / than other members  
haue. ¶ Also in this likenes / that is to say / in this feuer the members in  
the body be full dreye with sapne here w lytell humydte in so which he may  
warke in / he holdeth hym about in the ouer partys of the members. ¶ And  
cher for many vapours gre by and waloweth forth about ¶ in vnterpartys  
of the body. ¶ And this is the cause that this feuer is not moche felt outwarth  
though it be huge & greuous inwarde. ¶ And vnderstande ¶ ther be .viij. causes  
why the bypne may be lytell in quantite one may be by cause of lytell mete  
and lytell bypne. ¶ Another cause may be by Cystitis / that is to say / by opi-  
lacyn stoppyng of the wayes of the bypne as it is in stranguaria in lythiasy.  
Of which I sayde in the fyrst booke the .iiij. chappere. ¶ Another cause may  
be by cause of Marpnes and bypnyng and fortyng in water makynge as it is co-  
menly in schenes of ¶ bypne of bladder. Of which maner schenes it is sayde  
in the fyrst booke the .iiij. chappere also some tyme is caused through moxty-  
fyracyon of the bladder / that is to say / when the bladder is so contract / that  
is to say scrouched and so drawen to gether of scrouched byke a pux. ¶ And  
that is by cause of defeaute of kynde hete and kynde humydte / wherefore he  
is not of myght for to kepe nor to withholde the water within hym his full  
tyme. ¶ Also by cause of the Dallye of the bladder / as it is often tymes in  
folke that be olde and febul. And in those folke that be moche fleumatyke and  
dysposed to the Dallye / and to the Adroppe / for in suche folke are the se-  
newes so molle / Mede / that is to say some Mede by cause of moche humydte ¶  
they may not kepe nor withholde the bypne till his due tyme. ¶ Also it may  
be through excess of vnkynde hete wastynge and consuming kynde humydte  
in the body / as it is in Agrys and in continual feuers as in the t yd bypne  
for the kynde humydte that sholde bylate hym / and bylate hym in consum-  
typlycacyon of the bypne through violence of vnkynde hete / it is wasted dis-  
catted destroyed and for done / and that is the reason and the cause why lytell  
lypne in agrys & in continual feuers is a token of dech / for grete dech  
and consumpyon of the members and partys in the body causet lytell bypne  
¶ Also the cause of lytell bypne may be by cause of moche cystyon / and of  
other superfluytes / as the wombe flure grete swete and sacle other. ¶ And  
also ther be .viij. causes why the bypne is moche in quantite as by cau-  
se of mochemete and of moche bypne. ¶ Also by cause of superfluytes of hu-  
mours / also by cause of consumpyon of all the body as in them that are take





Take this  
for a rewle

Incencion  
of y blode.

Uyne of  
yoge melā.  
coly folke.

Uyne of  
olde folke.

the byrn moche towarde palenes And yf a colerous be myt with a coler  
naturall The byrne is cireyn moche towarde greynenes: that is to say yf byrn  
is cireyn togha a maner of greynenes And yf a colerous be myt with a coler  
cireyn byrne byrn in byrn whynenes And in this wyse is cireyn coloure dy-  
fers in byrne upon dyvers humours that he is myged as  
¶ Than take this for a rewle that byrn cireyn / or subcireyn / with a chynne  
body through out the body many chynnes in yonge folke / & menely in fleu-  
matyke / or melancolyke folke / for it is not answeringe to the complexyons  
For the bynde byrne of yonge folke fleumatyke and they be hoole sholde be  
alba / or lactea / or alba pallida with a body namely thynke / or menely thynne  
And therfore yf the byrn be cireyn in such a complexio / it sheweth excess of  
hete and unctyon / that is to say byrnyng of a coler / as it were incencion  
of the blode / that is to say yf yf blode were distillyed through excess of hete /  
wher through yf it fastowne a fever to be engengyd or caused / than sholde  
the body of the byrne be depe in colour / this is to say more hygher than cireyn /  
and more thicke The byrne of a melancolye man sholde be of colour / that is  
to say / pelowe / or pelowyshe with a thyn body And therfore cireyn or subc-  
ireyn byrne in yonge folke fleumatyke or melancolyke wher it be / the  
with a symple tertian / as I sayde yghenow But the byrne is more chyn in  
melancolye men / than in fleumatyke For yf yf bynde byrne of melancolye men  
sholde be pelowe / or pelowyshe and thyn And therfore yf it fastowen to shew  
contrary / that it sheweth excess of temperance yf is to say of excess of hete / or  
incencion of coler / as I sayde yghenow But not so moche excess as it doth in  
a fleumatyke man For yf yf byrn in a melancolye man / is more nere cireyn / than  
is yf byrn of fleumatyke man. ¶ If olde folke & namely fleumatyke / or el-  
melancolye make suche byrn / as all then / it sheweth duplex tertiana / the  
duble tertyan. For suche byrn accordeth not to the byrn of olde folke byrn-  
hoole / for euer more in olde folke byrn hoole of what complexyon so they be /  
there byrn ower to be whyte / or whypyshe & whanysh & dedyshe / by cause  
of febleness of kynde hete / & namely in fleumatyke & melancolye folke. In  
olde folke Coleryke & hoole they byrn shold be with a maner of greynenes /  
And therfore cireyn coloure in olde folke / sheweth grete dysperance of the  
complexyon. ¶ Also yf a chyld byrneth xlii. yere of age make cireyn byrne /  
It sheweth a fever continuam a continual fever: And the same byrn / that  
is to say / cireyn subcireyn in one that is coleryke / sheweth that he is hoole  
& strong For such is yf bynde byrn of coleryke complexyon. ¶ Also cireyn byrn  
is a thyn body / moche towarde palenes / & through out then / sheweth loy-  
shyp of melancolye naturall wout any fever. ¶ Melancolia naturalis / is dysce-  
ued in thre / to be one of yf. humours kyndely thynke & heavy & stubby /  
kyndely caused & genred of dyschylis / & of yf thynnes of blode / for melancolye  
is sayd of this word in greco. melan. i. black. & of this word in greco colon. i.  
humor / as the sayth black humor And wha this melancolye humours is gen-  
red of dyschylis & genred of yf thynnes of yf blode / anone he deundeth him in  
to yf. yere / wherof one half byth hem spyl to the blode / & passeth forth about.

with the blode in the body by cause of helpe and to make hym redy & conuen-  
 ble to þe members & lymines & parties in þe body/ which members & parties ought  
 to be fedde & norysshed w<sup>th</sup> the humours melancolye. And it helpeþ also þe  
 blode greatly/ for he thyrreth hym & kepeþ hym in temperur/ þe holde not  
 slepe nor styde a wyke/ or he haue made and brought digestion that he shold  
 make what other partye of melancolye is senth forth to the Splen by cause  
 of weake & of helpe/ for to fede & noryssh þe Splen. And also for to madryfe/  
 cleanse & purge all þe body. Item byn cittyen & with a then body/ beyng  
 moze then above than dountward And hauyng small grayns swymyng in  
 þe body of the byn & bubbles howyng aboute/ sheweth gretnesse as the byeste  
 & sekenes of þe spuales And disposicion towards the prylle. wher þe byn is  
 then & with luche a colour. i. cittyen/ is not by cause of grete hete in the body/  
 for than shold þe byn be red & moze hygh in colour/ for grete hete causeth de  
 pe colour in byn/ nor it is not by cause of coldnes/ for tha shold it be whyte  
 for grete ferygryte kyndely blyeth þe byn. i. maketh it whyte / nor þe hu-  
 midite maketh it not then for humidite cyeth the byne But it is then by  
 cause of grete drynes that is in þe body/ & dryneþally in þe spuales/ & there a-  
 bout the spuales And it is cittyen by cause of dysperancie of the feure/ which  
 feure may stant or brynethes be aperteynd/ and therfore luche maner byn  
 sheweth grete dysperancie/ by reason of drynes in the body/ & namely in the  
 byeste & in the spuales. Pectus et Cor. anglice þe byeste & the byeste bone/  
 be. i. parties of man that be harde & bonny/ & by cause therof þe byeste is colde  
 and dry/ for bones of þe byeste and all other parties that be bonny/ are kindly  
 colde & dry in complexyd And therfore they be releuþ holpen & kept & fede by  
 dryngis that be answeryng them in kynde As wakyng/ dyspoze/ good Eys  
 myght/ metes & dryne/ þe be swete feely & lictous/ & with ouer moch labour  
 & trauayle/ and luche other popntes that be cotrary to them/ they be noyed  
 greued & hurt. whan þe byn is moze then above/ than byneth it sheweth þe  
 the bones are moze desleat & moze dry aboute the byeste & the spuales/ than  
 in any other places of þe body. whan the byne is grauplous & ampullous. i.  
 full of greynes & bubbles/ it sheweth moche drynes at the byeste & sekenes  
 of þe spuales. Of bubbles and greynes see in the. iii. boke. If byn cittyen or  
 dyscittyen/ wonder then and drygh/ as it were berged and fenestred/ as I  
 sayd in þe Chappre de albo coloz/ sheweth dysperancie of the Splen. i. sple  
 natia passio. Item byne cittyen then and moche in quantyte with the  
 and lenenes in the body/ and with a constryct wombe. i. with a harde bombe  
 or dysperancie of the lyuer. i. Epatica Passio/ which is caused throug gre  
 te drynes of þe lyuer for whan Epatica is moche dysmperyd throug drynes  
 as it oftentymes falleth throug heuyl of hete takyng/ and somtyme of  
 chyllte. Epatica dweth to hym all that he may of succite. i. moystour out fro þe  
 coppes and guttes/ for to helpe and moyste and myght hymself/ & that is the epatica pas  
 cause of moche quantyte of the byne in this sekenesse And comenly this is sig.  
 the token of Epatica Passio he feleth payne about the Epicondylis And na-  
 mely about the ryght Epicondylis/ and therwith he thynketh somtyme as if

melancolye

the byeste of  
the byeste bo-  
ne.

Drynes of  
þe byeste & of  
þe spuales.

Epatica  
passio unde  
causatur.

Signes of



## Liber secundus.

affordynge of  
fleume to þ  
trothe.

byrne full  
of small  
graynes.

coloz natu  
rall.

coloz citri  
indigest.

coloz citrin  
yggest.

whyte fleu  
me.

there a floure walmyng up to the throt and that is nothyng but a hote drie  
fumolyte brestynge oute and byrnyng and walmyng so by. And ther of is  
tyme folke take ther deth / of Spicondys / yow may se in capitula de luida  
colore. ¶ Item byrne citrine and chynne and byrgh with bubbles about the  
weith myghyng on the lunges / but it lightly passeth a way. ¶ If it be full  
of small graynes / it sheweth as I sayde in the thyde crule afoze. Item yf  
it be so that the byrne shewe hym citrine in the fyrste begynnynge / or about  
the begynnynge of an ague / it sheweth crudite and compaccyon of the mater  
whiche crudite and compaccyon causeth ydolite / that is to say / longe last-  
tyng of þ sphenesse which causeth falsynge of myghte & kynd / and so cometh  
deth / but yf he have the better keppynge and the sonder helpe of crudite &  
compaccyon in capitula de lacte colore. ¶ Also yf the same maner byrne ap-  
pere sette inward in an ague / and before that byrn appered and shewed an  
byrn Rubra or Subrubra Rubicunda / or Subrubicunda. And ther with no  
token of mendynge sheweth that the sphenman wyll fall in to a streynle and  
that the mater of the sphenesse wyll sty by in to the byrne / and yf the same  
byrn shewe hym as above sayd with good tokens then it sheweth mendynge  
and walmyng of the sphenesse Coloz citrine compounded of a kynde coler that  
is rede kyndely and of a kynde fleume that is kyndely colde and moyst for.  
Coloz in as moche as it is kyndely hote and drye and rede / he thynneth and  
clerech and tubeth the byrne. But fleume in as moche as he is kyndely colde  
and moyst and whyte he thycheth and turbeth and whyteth the byrne  
and so by reason of whytnes of fleume / the redenes of the byrne is the lesse  
And in this wyse is the Coler citrine caused. And by this reason is the byrne  
of Coler citrine lesse rede & lesse thynne than byrn of rede coloz. ¶ Coloz na-  
turalis & Coler Rubra anglie rede coler and a kynde coler be all one. ¶ But  
take good hede / þ somtym coloz citrine is dygested & somtyme indigested  
whan coler citrine is indigested the byrne is subcitrine and wonder thynne  
for while he is indigested he with standeth and letteth the kynd that wol-  
de deluere hym self out with the byrn / wherfore ther may no grosse humours  
passe forth with the byrne / with whos admixcyon the byrne sholde have his  
inspissacyon / þ is to say his thychnes. ¶ But coler citrin dygest / causeth byrn  
citrin or subcitrin with a mene thynnes. And this is the Philosophie for co-  
ler citrin dygest with standeth not / nor letteth not the kynd in delueryng  
hym self out as he doth whan he is indigest and ther for passeth out some  
grosse humours with the byrne which causeth the byrne to be menele treke  
¶ If coler citrin take grete dysemperance of hete / as it falleth of tentyne in  
agues / that is to say in hote fevers than is the byrn moze hyper in coloz and  
moze deper in citrin. And yf coler citrin be not dysamped through hete / than  
is the byrne moze remisse / that is to say lesse rede citrin / and moze thynne  
and this is by reason þ fleume vitre and rede coler see mixte together as I  
sayd. ¶ Fleumum vitreum & fleumum album anglie a fleume vitre / and  
a whyte fleume be all one Coler natural / and rede coler be all one. ¶ Coler  
citrin & Coler bytelyn be all one. ¶ Coler adust thow haste in the ca. afoze

Explicit Novum capitulum de Citrino colore et Subcitrino.

Incipit Decimum capitulum de Rubeo colore et Subrubeo colore.

**B**alsa beina. englice cudy byrne is moost lyke fyne golde and subyuse  
 and thynne pure and equal. Sheweth Corpus Encraticum a body encraticke neth coloz  
 that is to say / that the body is in good and even proporcion of four qu-  
 lites / that is to say / in good even temper betwene colde and hote / for yf  
 the humours were dystempered through excess of hete / than sholde the byrn  
 be depe in coloz / as dede oz blodged / yf they were dystempered through ex-  
 cess of colde / the byrne sholde be as subcitrin / oz moost lower. And ther  
 for rufus coloz sheweth good mene betwene bothe / in as moche as the body  
 of y byrn is pure as I sayde and not swart nor dyyn / nor dyslyt / nor reuby  
 it sheweth that the kynd hete is myghty for to purge and cleene the maters /  
 that is to say / the humours / the equalite of the byrn sheweth that ther is no  
 perturbacion nor dysoutbyng of humours in the body. But that they be  
 all in good temper / when the byrne is mene betwene thycke and thynne /  
 it sheweth also good temper and good proporcion of the humours in the body.  
 And therfore Coloz Rufus in the byrn that is to say / rede colout oz els gol-  
 den coloz in the byrne is a mene coloz bytwene all colozs / for ther is none  
 other colout that goyth sonye al colout / that is to say / towarde al colout  
 in kynd as doth that colout / nor that so moche accordyth to al in kynde / for  
 of al colout he hath some parte kyndely therof. And therfor he moost accor-  
 dyth to all the four humours neverthelesse the same byrne as I sayd betoke-  
 neth not in every complecyon lyke as I have sayd and as thou shalt se her  
 after / for as byrne citrin sheweth good temperance in a colyke man as I as citrin bi-  
 sayde in pnyre ca. afore / rube so byrn Rufe sheweth good temperance in one tin sheweth  
 that is sanguyne. Also byrne Rufe / oz subyuse / and thynne in a Chylde sheweth in a colicth  
 with a fever cotidian / in yong folke not sanguyne it sheweth a symple terci-  
 an / the same byrne in olde folke hematys / and also in women not san-  
 guyne sheweth a duble section. For it sheweth that they be moche out of ther in a sangu-  
 kynde temperance through excess of hete / for the kynde byrne of olde men is man-  
 and women / that are not full sanguyne / oweth to be palyshe wannyshe a  
 dynnysh. Also y same maner byrne in sometyme of y yere / as in Autumpno  
 and in wynter sheweth Botham and namely after the daye of the accres.  
 Botha / that is to say / quartana non vera. And understand  
 that ther is moze perell of a fever in Autumpno / that is to say / to falle in takynge of  
 fever in Autumpno / then in wynter / for in Autumpno the sonne goeth fro a fever in  
 us. And therfor in Autumpno do on most clothes / and kepe the warmest for Autumpno  
 this reason. For the humours in mannes bodye wher taken afore with hete  
 of the sonne / and afterwarde they are smytthynne with colde that foloweth  
 And so they engrosseth and cluddeth and clumpeth to gether / and are  
 dystempered. And therof be often tymes caused dyvers fevers.  
 Sometyme Tertians. And sometyme quartans. And sometyme other. And



## Liber secundus.

therfore in Autumpe is þe double tyme of al the yere for to fall in sydenes:

¶ Item the same mater byrne yf it appere so as aforesayd longe tyme to ge-  
ther & without feuer/ it sheweth califfacie/ that is to say chaufyng & unkynd  
hete of the lyue/ whiche chaufyng and dyssempere of the lyue/ is caused

cause byrne  
is a bym-  
nes of is a  
sape.

through excess of unkynde hete/ & that unkynd hete of þe lyue causeth þe co-  
loure in þe byrn. ¶ If byrn tuse of subpuse with a mene body & is a maner

of a byrne sape in the ouer parte of þe byrne/ sheweth the sydenes in in the be-  
gynnyng/ or els but late begonne/ & also it sheweth a hote feuer Interpolat

caused of a salt flume þe men calle a salt flume. The byrne sape is caused

of meltyng & transpyng of the unkynd hete/ & of the resoluyng of vapours

and of fumolytes. ¶ Item yf the same maner of byrne without sape about

do appere inward in þe sydenes as after the .iii. accen/ it sheweth a sterian/ &

take hede þe euery maner flume is bypate in byrn self/ & by cause ther of it ma-  
keth þe byrne supple/ & cloddy/ & byrnysse. And also yf þe feuer be ce-  
solued/ fumolytes of dyslancoyle whiche are lyght by waye of kynde passe

by to þe ouer parte of the byrne/ and ther causeth a maner of a sape. ¶ Item

byrne tuse of els subpuse and menely chynne with no sape/ & is to say/ with

no dunnes about but with a body pure and equal/ and semdele more chynne

than theke about by estimacion/ it sheweth þe his body hath moche of salt

flume/ or els that he is moche dysposed ther to/ & yf it be so þe in suche byrne

appere many smale resoluyons/ they shewe the shabbe/ & yf thou take good

hede þe yf the resoluyons shewe them in ouer parte of the byrne/ it is token

of a shabbe bydyng in þe ouer parte of the body/ yf they shewe in þe myddes of

the byrne/ than on þe wombe & ther aboute/ yf they shewe in the nether parte

of the byrn it sheweth the shabbe to be about the generatyf and the thep/

and the legges & the fete/ and they appere through out the body of the byrn

it betokeneth þe shabbe to be/ tha through out all the body. ¶ If byrne tuse

of subpuse/ semdele more theke than chynne/ or betwene bothe haupng no

sape nor dunnes about/ and yf the byrne haue lasted longe tyme in one þe

hath the Idropisie it sheweth both for it is very token that þe euil humours/

that caused the Idropisie be lupten & taken and stronkled & byent/ with be-  
kynde hete of the feuer/ wher by he is taken with a hote Idropisie whiche by-  
kynde humours/ for as moche as they be so fele in þe body/ & that þe body is so

ful of them/ & so soye dyssempere through them/ that the same dyssempere

and the unkynde hete of the feuer will dyscorre and overcome the kynd sub-  
stanciall humide of the body/ or overkynd may be of myght for withstand

and to overcome the same euil humours/ and on this wyse is the hote Idro-  
pisie caused. ¶ And therfore as testeth Apocras in his booke of pnythe/ yf it

so be þe ther come a hote feuer in Idropisie/ it is the worst toke þe may be/ for

tha he is incurable/ and ther is no remedy but deeth. The same sheweth

Therophilus in his booke of byrn whiche sayth lyke as wher byrn or watery

byrne in Idropisie sheweth the patient to be curabull tyght so deeth tuse

byrne shewe the patient to be incurabull/ so sayeth also Constantyne

Gilbertus & Chady/ of the calde Idropisie you may se in capi. de lundo colore

how is the  
hote idrop-  
sy causeth.

Item byrne cuse / or subuise with a body menely thyrche and bypurre in the  
 quall and with a say above / is to say with a swarthe and bymme in the  
 ouer parte ther of it sheweth a feuer morbidan caused of a fleume / that is cal-  
 led of leume bylet a feuer fleume of a freche fleume. Item of the byrne be  
 not sal cuse / but more subuise withal that other for sayde paynes / it sheweth  
 dulce fleume a freche fleume without a feuer / every maner fleume as I sayde  
 is bypurre and byclengeth hym self byndely / and by cause therof / every ma-  
 ner fleume causeth a maner of bymme and derkenes in byn. But fleume  
 dulce colozeth the byrne in two maner wyse / one wyse is by cause of his mix-  
 tyon with other humours / for by cause that he is byndely whete and thyrche  
 as every maner fleume is / he maketh the byrne whete and thyrche / but less  
 whete than doth fleume naturaler and more thyrche than doth fleume salte  
 for fleume dulce is some dele less whete / than is fleume naturaler / some  
 dele more more than fleume salte. Item when loeth fleume colozeth the  
 byrne through bynde of his qualytes / he maketh the byrne subuise / or els  
 cuse. And this by cause of menues / that he hath of the blode / whiche blode is  
 byndely calidus & humidus / hote and moyst and therefore he is more byndely  
 hote and moyst than any other fleume / as thou maye se in capitulo de glauco-  
 coloz. Item the byrne is thyrche as I sayde with greche coloz / it sheweth ster-  
 yng and bycling / that is to say bycling of humours in the body / and therfor  
 are caused many fumolytes and ventosities in the body. Item it is menely  
 thyrche / it sheweth but mene dystoutbyng of the humours / when the body  
 of the byrne is unpure / it sheweth that bynde hote is not of power / nor of  
 myght for to cleane and purge the humours. The byrne saye in the byn is by  
 cause of exsolucion of fumolytes of melancolye caused by dystemperance of  
 the feuer / whiche fumolytes for as moche as they are lyght of bynde / they  
 draweth the bynde / to the ouer parte of the byrne / and causeth ther / a  
 maner of derkenes and bymme. Item byrne cuse & subuise / menely thyrn  
 and menely thyrche with blones / and with a maner of bymme above / and  
 of the byrne shewe hym so longe tyme / it sheweth the humours are gre-  
 ued and exauypled with plenty of fleume / that is to say / salt fleume / or els  
 freche fleume / of the byrne be menely thyrne it is with a salt fleume / of it  
 be menely thyrche it is with a freche fleume / and it is knowne by hokking  
 lyttrayth byrth and by seles at the byrth. Item if a man or woman maketh greche  
 byrne / it sheweth she hath a sekenes on her matrice / whiche sekenes is cau-  
 sed thogh excess of a salt fleume / or of a freche fleume / or of whiche so ever it  
 be. Item I knowe it / as I sayde right now / but that in the woman's byrne she  
 hath exsolucion of the humours / somtyme whete / som tyme blacker than al-  
 she hath grete payne of her moder / a namelyn she is byndely / in grete dyst-  
 ryng of mater and with grete enflawmyng and walmyng / the matrice is of-  
 ten tyme ouer layde and overcharged / with a salt fleume and she holdeth  
 hym byndely / and touneth hym to speche a corruption and corrupeth sayth  
 by vena. Concreta so / Cras / and ther enstreteth and corrupeth the blood  
 and so for the to the bladder / by the water gatten / that be called Pychides

sweth Bea  
me.

bypurre  
fleume.

fumolytes  
ventosities

dystemperas  
of the byrne  
throug fleu-  
me.



signes of  
the feuer  
ethyke.

and somtyme the herte cometh by cause of dynted of the spirales And also maye  
 enough by cause of superfluytes of the mater / that is containyd in the spira-  
 les. ¶ This whiteness of body / is caused of herte function & spyled about in  
 menses of the body / & then dissolving and waying the hynde humours in  
 the body and consuming the spirales. ¶ And take good hede that though this  
 whynesse herte be moche in the body and in the spirales / Nevertheless comenly  
 in this sickness it is felt but lytell / or els nothyng to his chynching for co-  
 menly they that have this sickness be disposed to so moche colde / & they fele  
 but lytell herte. But yf it be in grete excess / as in some type / & yet may they  
 comenly suffer more grete herte / than other folke. But they suffer grete stre-  
 nes and deafeite at the herte. And these are the very tokens of C type / & wher  
 of / & how C type is caused / thou hast sufficiently in p chap. of blew colour.

Leness of  
 body in the  
 C type.

Explicit de hunc capitulum de rubro colore et subrubro colore.  
 Incipit de hunc capitulum de rubro colore et subrubro colore.

hete begyn  
 neth rede  
 coloz l bym

**R**ubens color in bym / is more hygher than is tufus colour for rufus is  
 bymene bymene rede golde and blode rede / & it is caused of blode & coles  
 myxt together / for as I sayd in the chapytre of pale colours / Right as a lytel  
 quantyte of netes galle mixt w<sup>th</sup> a good quantyte of water in a vessel / causeth  
 not a rede colour / but a pale colour / or els subcitrine / & yf moche of netes gall  
 be mixt w<sup>th</sup> lytell quantyte of water / it causeth a citryn colour / or els a rufe co-  
 lour. The same manner wyl be when lytel coles is myxt w<sup>th</sup> the bym / it causeth  
 but a fayne colour in the bym / as pale / or subcitrine. And yf moche coles be  
 myxt w<sup>th</sup> the bym / this is p colour in p bym wel redded / as a depe citryne / or  
 subruif / or ruf / for p moche of coles that p bym hath the more goth the bym  
 toward rede colour / for by reason p colour is byndly in him self thyn & byghe  
 & clere / he causeth the bym to be thyn & byghe & clere. ¶ And yf the bym be  
 thyn & clere / it standeth by coles more than by blode. And yf the bym be  
 byghe & clere / it standeth by coles more than by blode. And all this is by  
 reason of the qualites of blode & coles / as I have sayd in many chapytres be-  
 fore. ¶ C type / & subrubra / & clere sheweth a feuer tercian. And tokens  
 of this sickness is aine in the herte / and namely in the ryght parte / for there  
 regneth coles / and herte mouthe is dryte / and herte cyng / for p colour the  
 weth grete bymning of herte and disemperant of coles / and the thynnes and  
 byghe and closenes / is a token of grete sicke. ¶ Item bym rubra or subru-  
 bes / and more thyn about than byneth / and with a bymnes about sheweth Rede or sub-  
 divers significacions / upon divers ages / and divers complexions / as both bym rede bymne  
 citryn. For that bym in a shyld sheweth a feuer Cotidia / and in yonge folke more thyn  
 and namely of Coltyke complexion / it sheweth a tercian. ¶ The same bymne about than  
 in olde folke / and namely in Flemmysh / or Belandyshe / and also in a wo beneath the  
 man / and pynnyng p the sickness have not longe tyme lasteth / but a. iiii. with diuer  
 dayes / some sheweth .v. dayes / some but .ix. dayes / it sheweth a duble terci-  
 se significan-  
 on. ¶ If the same bymne shew hym so longe tyme / and the patient have no ciong.



a feuer con  
tyn uall is  
caused. ii.  
maner wy.  
60

the medell  
Empyric.

Howe gre-  
ne coler is  
caused

feuer therewith it sheweth califfaction of the lyuer But than þe bypne hath a  
maner of bymnes as I sayd aboue And also it is as a maner of yelownes  
or greenenes and bymnyng And also a party frothy. And thus tuben of sub  
tuben with a body menely thicke and ymure a smagall and thorough out tra  
bly sheweth a feuer continuall. And thus in his booke of bypne teacheth  
that a feuer continuall is caused. ii. maner wyse. ¶ For other it is caused of  
Coler corrupte without þe vesselles. I. bypne. or els of corrupte vapours suf  
flawmyng up about the herte. ¶ Also a feuer interpellat is caused in. ii. ma  
ner wyse. for it is caused of corrupte water withoute the vesselles. or els of  
corrupte vapours nowe. a nowe enflawmyng the herte thus saythe he. ¶ Item  
the same bypne tuben of subpube menely thicke. sic haue a greenishnes aboue  
it sheweth the myddell Emptice. In þe myddell Emptice is grete bymnyng  
by reason that Coler is continually botoplyng as a playnge potte. a hur  
lynge aboute in þe vessell. and fleume without þe vessell. for Coler is lyght  
of kynde. and when he is byent and purged. he is moze lyght. and by reason  
therof he styeth up and halberth bym aboute in the bypne. and so causeth ther a  
maner of greenenes. but that same greenenes is so lytel. þe it is not perceyued  
but yt thou put ther a thynne bande. as I sayd in the next Chapytre afore of  
blones. ¶ Item the same bypne only. excepte the blones aboue sheweth þe leu  
celm. of whiche it is sayd in. ca. de liquido colore. for as moche as collection  
of euill mater. is in the mether. that is to say. vnder the rybbes. whiche ryb  
bes lyghtly feleth payne a angurthe. anone as they be ought of temper. and  
so for as moche as they be. more moynng and styng. that same mater  
so collecte there. It bowleth and hurleth and bymnyth. and so causeth sche  
nelle hote and sharpe. that is to say. hure feuer. ¶ Also when Coler in  
grete quantite is grete aboue. and made lyght. by cause of hure and of bym  
nyng. it sheweth bywarde in the bypne. and that is that. that semeth as it  
were a greenenes aboue in the bypne. ¶ Item the same bypne. excepte the gre  
nenes aboue sheweth the þe leu celm. And yt is so. that a herte styte or a bym  
nes. sheweth bym apertly aboue in the bypne. withoute any purynge to of thynne  
bande. or els a maner of greenishnes. knowe well that it is caused of fumositi  
tes and vapours. þe are caused of Coler. whiche by cause of lyghtnes styeth  
up to the out partye of the bypne. and there causeth a greenenes. or a greyn  
or bothe. as I haue sayde before. ¶ Item vnderstande that I pocras teacheth  
in his booke of pponosmes. that grete Jowters are not moche þe leu celm.  
Ande verius. Scilicet Jucantes non valde pleuritici sunt.

Explicit Vnde dicitur capitulum de Rubro Colore et de Rubro Colore  
Incipit duodecimum capitulum de Rubicunda Colore et de Rubicunda Colore.

here begyn  
meth bypne  
rubicunda.

**R**ubina Rubicunda. is the moze depe bypne in colour that is. or mare  
be. and it is moze lyke fyne rede. or els moze lyke blode. when it is  
moze fyne and moze pure lyght. anglice blode rede. and Rubicunda is moze  
lyke watery blode And the moze parte of auctour treatise of tuben a subpube





Note this  
for a gene  
rall cawse

Paula.

Liturgia.

no beret is  
p feuer  
noctus cau  
sed general  
ly.

feuer syno  
cha.

Differens  
bet ween  
noctus &  
nocha.

above, i. of that same thynghes & troubles dynto to confidence in p bothum &  
were thynghes cleare above. It sheweth whatsyng and synghing of p the  
ness. ¶ For when the hyn bewerth a cleare hyn self above. It sheweth p  
the howyleng & the hynghing of the humours in the bodysch which ofore  
were so qualysed & so distubled in p both, that p hyn myght not shewe bl  
equall for p hyn & p is shewe hyn contrary. ¶ For the hyn dwell full chock  
about and cleare hyn self hynghing. It sheweth both. ¶ For it is a token of sy  
nging up of p matter into the hyn & in to the hynghes. And therof it is hyngh  
of the frenelle/ or of the mayr/ or of the lptarge. ¶ For the mayr is  
a tynghing up to belows of the hynghes & a tynghing & a modnes. ¶ A itargia  
the lptarge is a tynghing of the hynghes & a tynghing fulnes & a tynghing  
is in lptarge. ¶ For the hynghes & a tynghing be they p hyn this shewes. as a tynghing  
netics is hyn both p frenelle. wher the hynghes & a tynghing as a tynghing in  
nocho. is by cause of grete hynghes & a tynghing and hynghing of the blode.  
The thynghes of p hynghes is caused of humours of p blode. For as I have offe  
sard humours chocketh p hynghes. And when p hynghes is the chocke in a hote hyn  
ghes. it is a good token. For it sheweth that ther is sufficient moysture of blo  
de in p hynghes. For p hynghes is a tynghing. I have also sard in other chappres. The  
blones is caused as I sard of corruption of eaten humours. i. of eaten blode.  
The thynghes of a tynghing eyll eyll chocke is caused of corruption of blode. ¶ For  
decide thynghes that thynghes is not caused thynghes of quantites of blo  
de. i. not of overmuch blode. nor is it not caused of over lptarge blode. But unq  
ly of eyll qualites of blode. i. of eyll distemperance of blode. as when the  
blode is changed out of his owne hynghes & turned in to eyll & corruption  
to lptarge. ¶ For the hynghes & a tynghing have auctours lptarge p thynghes is caused  
both of eyll qualites of blode. that is to say. of eyll distemperance of the  
blode & also of quantites of blode. i. of overmuch blode. ¶ For the same ma  
ner hynghes without blones & without eyll humours. sheweth a feuer that is  
called thynghes & thynghes is a hote feuer. enflawmyng the hynghes. ¶ For  
hynghes that there is difference between thynghes and thynghes. For thynghes  
is a hote feuer enflawmyng the hynghes. caused of plenty of eyll blode in  
the hynghes pynghing and tynghing the pynghes. more by cause of quanty  
ty of eyll blode. than by cause of qualites of eyll blode. that is to say. more  
through plenty of eyll blode. than through eyllnes of eyll blode. ¶ And  
thynghes is a hote feuer. corruptly enflawmyng the hynghes. caused of  
corrupt blode in the hynghes pynghing and tynghing the pynghes. more  
by cause of corruption of eyll blode. than by cause of eyll blode. ¶ For  
these. ii. distemperances than may be hote these. ii. fevers be caused and hote  
ther differre a lptarge. And also in thynghes be hynghes not corrupt enflaw  
myng the hynghes. In thynghes be hynghes corrupt enflawmyng p hynghes. Also  
in thynghes p hynghes is not blode. nor is both no eyll lptarge at p hynghes. But  
in thynghes is both. Also in thynghes the hynghes is less thynghes & a tynghing. than  
in thynghes. also in thynghes is some interpolacion. p is to say. some res





12-20-1911  
11-10-11

**Explicit Dictionarii capituli de Ratione et Salvacione Colore.**

**W**hite Inyones is moche lyke wyne that is blackyshe and thynke as  
wyne of Calmye / as wyne of greke / or ellyshe wyne moche lyke mo  
dy water y<sup>e</sup> in swarte schyde / as wyne se in som countre tober y<sup>e</sup> soyle is vede  
claye Inyones color anglyste swarte coye is compoyned of two colours / that  
is to say of blacke & rede. And as blacke colour hath encremyge a thynke body  
tyght so hath encremyge Inyones coloure thynke body. For they both be nerhand  
of one thyng caused and genyred. Theophilus sayeth that when the bloode  
and coler be aduylt / that is to say / all for bynde and corrupte then be they  
bothe myttre to gether / and of this cometh colour Inyones. And tyght as black  
colour in wyne that I spake of in the fyfte chappre of this booke and in the  
ii. chappre also / is caused of myltification tyght so is colour Inyones  
caused of aduylt. And ther for his generall significacyon is excess of here  
And Inyones hath y<sup>e</sup> same colour in al popyres lyke / save that Inyones is moche  
black / for Inyones is moche lyke red dyled / as purpur / Inyones is moche to sayd  
purpur / & y<sup>e</sup> same Inyones y<sup>e</sup> is to be geny by y<sup>e</sup> one y<sup>e</sup> same is to be geny in y<sup>e</sup>  
other / save that Inyones is some deir wyne. And therfore all auctours trete  
of them bothe all under one. And Gilbertus sayeth and dyuers auctours  
also / that byn Inyones hath ofentyne dyuers colours. for in some parte of  
the wyne it is Rubicunda as I saye and in some parte it is swarte / and some  
parte of hym it is blysshe in some tyme with a greensnes. Some auctours

Apertly that Inopos & hyanos are caused somtyme of congelatyon of blode as  
 when any vyne byeth wher out floueth blode of which blode when it  
 is out of his vessel / that is to say / out of his vyne / he is out of his place /  
 and then that blode congeleth / that is to say / wareth colde and cluddeth &  
 clumpeth togeder / and becommeth swart and blacke like in colour / and so  
 causeth the same coloz in vyne. ¶ And somtyme the same colour is caused by  
 reason of aduysion of blode / that is to say / when the blode is byente / and  
 shalbe and shogled through excess of brynde here / as it is in aguis / for of  
 the mynes in Aguis the here is byennynge so byolent / and so stronge / that he  
 toucheth and chaungeth the vinctuosityte of the blode / that is to say / the hynde  
 colour / and the hynde byghtnes of the blode in to an excess of Coler / wherfor  
 the blode is moche dystouled and dystemped / and brought moche out of his  
 owne kynd bothe in qualite / and in colour. ¶ And therfore of the superfluite  
 of the blode / the vyne taketh coloz / for vyne is called the superfluite of  
 the blode / somtyme coloz. Inopos or hyanos be caused through febleness of  
 the lyuer as when Spar is so feblisshed / and so dystemped that it is not of  
 myght / for to departe nor deuide the pure frome the vyture / as it comenly  
 falleth in them that be in the Idropille / and in shabbed folke. ¶ Item an  
 vyne Inopos or hyanos in an Ague sheweth deth. And vynyccally of the  
 vyne that was made afore the vyne were hille and of subyule / for it sheweth  
 so grete aduysion of humours in the body / that they may be no more aduysed wher  
 fore kynd sayeth / the body is dystouled / but the vyne / that is to say / Inopos  
 & hyanos with out a feuer is not peryllous. ¶ The vyne Inopos & hyanos is  
 dele more thyn in the mydde regyon / than els wher sheweth Idropille that is  
 curabell by medycyns be menystryd to the pacyet / that be helpynge & confortynge the  
 lyuer. ¶ The Inopos & hyanos in one the body / though he have hadde it long  
 tyme / though the stone be full grown / it sheweth that the stone is dissoluyd  
 and bysten / or els that it is bystynge. ¶ Item byn Inopos or hyanos with  
 small chesel / or els with small lnd in the body / that is wher sheweth bystynge  
 bystynge or stonyng of the vyne in the body / or of the byache of the vyne / or of the  
 hyl / or of som byache of hym is byest / or bystranapled what the hyl is pou may  
 se in ca. de lunde coloz / of the hyles be byest he dyeth within a cert. houres or  
 els within .iij. day / of som byache of the hyle be byest he feleth grete payne in  
 the backe / namely in the .v. Joynt of the rygbone / tellynge fro benethe bywarde  
 ¶ Also byest auctours sheweth the man / tyme byn the byest hyl Inopos or  
 hyanos in hole folke .i. in folke that are not lyde by cause of byest of the  
 humours in the body / that may be caused by byest wayer / as somtyme by cause  
 of byestynge or bystynge or bystranaplynge of som vyne in the hyl / or in the  
 bladder or by cause of swetyng out of blode through the vyne / for of tyme  
 it is caused through rennyng or bystynge / or bystynge or els through moche  
 bystranaplynge / & somtyme it is caused through excess of ichtery / or in the other  
 poyntes wher the stone that is byest som small vyne / or som small senewe  
 in the vyne / or of the bladder / or in som other places of the body / & though they be  
 no vyne byest as afore sayd byest it may be caused thowow byest & excess of

hoto coloz  
 Inopos is  
 caused

vinctuosi-  
 tas sangis

superfluite  
 of the body

Coler Inopos may  
 be caused by  
 the feble  
 of the lyuer  
 as in the  
 Idropille

byest

somtyme  
 byest the  
 meth ino-  
 pos & hyan-  
 nos hole  
 folke



## Liber secundus.

moche straunglyng / for the haynes are other whyle so carfare / that is to  
say / so thynne / that the blode owleth and swilteth and sweteth through þ  
haynes and so causeth suche color in the byrre & namely it is caused through  
excess of lycheys which excesseth and sterteth the blode / and all for trouy  
leth the haynes and the synowes of the body / and maketh the loutyns / and  
all the wayes of the speme came / and fede / and so cometh also such color in  
the byrre / which byrre betokeneth deeth / but yf the better helpe be made /  
and when this color is caused of excess of lycheys / they are the tokens / ther  
sheweth in the byrre / as it were copping thynge. And as it were portres  
of whyle glet / or of speme. And also ther sheweth long resadyns / as whyle  
a redyng / moche lyke þ washing of carer flesh / which resadyns be of þ sub  
stance of the loutyns / & that is þ worst token of all / for it sheweth that bynd  
is consumpte. ¶ **Byrre** Inopos or haynos (scym sheweth Epatica passio  
ne / sometyne pleuresyn / sometyne peripulmoniam / and sometyne Aycam  
passione / though Epatica passio be taken comenly in physyke for every syke  
nes of the lyuer / neuerthelesse understande it here for aposteme of the lyuer.

¶ **Item** understande **Alica passio** here in this chapytre not as I sayde in the  
chapytre of haynos / but for aposteme on þ crynes / for **Alica passio** is it  
is taken here of this woode **Ale**. ¶ **Ale** is the pyth and the strength of a thyng  
And therefore **Ale** is sometyne taken for þ crynes & sometyne for the loutyns  
for out of the crynes and loutyns cometh pyncypally the pyth and the myght  
of generacyon both in man and in best.

¶ **Thus Alica passio** as I sayde  
is taken here and often tyme in physyke for aposteme on þ crynes. And **Alica**  
tus is he that hath **Alica passio**. ¶ But yf thou wilt knowe surely when that  
colour Inopos & haynos in byrre sheweth Epatica passio / & whā it sheweth  
pleuresyn & whā peripulmonia & whā **Alica passio** as I sayde þ cometh vpo this  
most enquire yf þ patient fele any pythynge in þ cryght or in the left syde or  
yf he be short brethed or yf he fele any payne in þ crynes or yf þ patient fele  
grette payne & straythens of þ byrre / as payne / at the best hauyng suche byrre  
that is to say Inopos and haynos it sheweth the patient to be pulmonic / for

he that is pulmonicus / his cryntails be overcome with hete. ¶ **Pulmonicus** is  
he þ hath **Pulmoniam** or **Peripulmoniam** wher of powe shalle se further in  
capitulo de luida colore / and yf the patient haue grete pythynge and grete  
payne in the crynes / he is **Alicus** **Alicus** is he that hath aposteme in the  
crynes / and then comenly the colour of the byrre goth moche toward the  
Inopos / and she is grete gorette of ded / & namely in aged folke. And they  
that haue this passio comenly when they yll / they groweth and maketh  
noys for payne / for they moue the payne wher caused of the stone and ma  
ny tymes that some payne is caused of þ stone / sometyne it is caused both of  
aposteme in the crynes & also of þ stone both to gether / thē it is very token  
of deche / and this maner of aposteme is longe tyme of bydyng / as þ stone  
is & as other aposteme be / moche more payne is felt by reason of the posteme  
than is by reason of þ stone. ¶ **Item** when þ sayde byrre sheweth Epatica  
passio / aposteme on the lyuer / and when it sheweth Pleuresis / aposteme on

Handwritten marginal notes in Arabic script, likely a translation or commentary on the medical text.

Handwritten marginal notes in Arabic script, likely a translation or commentary on the medical text.

**L. LORENZ**

if token2

### III. token:

**Satien te**

**ETHY .D.  
rtnies co**

known as

## The code

000000

**P. H. LOREN**

**P. int. tota**

**.b. tokens**

**apollene**

8 caused

**L. Hallett**  
wife

100



## Liber secundus.

aposteme  
caused of  
malacolie.

And somtyme the aposteme hangeth cleweth without on þe backe of þe lyuer  
as a bange.

And somtyme it hangeth cleweth with þe lappetes of þe lyuer  
as somtyme they be caused of grosse veynes / þat are closede / soth wher / it  
wolde out and may not / tha yf it be so / that þe aposteme on þe lyuer be without  
þe lyuer / as I sayde ryght now / you may fele it with touchyng of your hāde  
on the rybbes / whā the posteme is on the wombe of the lyuer / as on the lap  
petes of the lyuer you can not do so / and yf the posteme be on the bange of þe  
lyuer / as betwene the lappetes of the lyuer the patient feleth grete payne &  
grounce in the ryght side betwene the lyuer and the rybbes / and specially  
whā þe patient draweth his brest and maketh stykes of cresset hastyly / as  
cenneth hastyly as fast / and the bte of these thynges wyll shewe the patient  
whithin short tyme / also be that both this posteme is somewhat short byrthed  
a his face is wanne & yellowe / yf a posteme be caused of hote mater / þe pa  
tient hath wēthyn a hote fever & grete thyrs / & frysse his tonge is redde  
& afterwarde blacke / yf it be caused of a colde aposteme be feleth but lytel  
hete & lytell thyrs / yf a posteme be caused of hantolte / be feleth grete  
payne in the ryght Epicondrie / a his colour in his face is ceryous / a blo  
yssh / ever / maner of aposteme in what members / or place it be / it is but col  
lection of euill humours / a pyncepal of blode. Whiche styeth in the aūt. bo  
be of fevers / þe pleurisie is a hote aposteme growyng in the myddese / caused  
of euill humours that cometh of falset from the heigne to the lunges / a some  
tyme it falset to þe myddese / a somtyme to the fleshe of þe rybbes / whā they  
come to þe lunges / the it is called properly Pulmonia / or Pulmonia / a the  
be feleth but lytell payne as to regarde / for Pulmo is a member þe mansuf  
feth moch whenes in a long tyme as it be moch preserved as known / and  
though þe schenes on þe lunges be but lytell felle / neuertheless þe spās be  
moch beved in þe schenes / for Pulmo is the instrument of the spās / a they þe  
be gretly defiled or schenell in this maner / whenes there is hote / a the  
beas are bloe / a they fele fowdele more than hēd hōt in the extremities  
also they haue lytel cōgēd. I. lytel belgūer / a the wōnd / also they be slow  
in pyllyng / a they make moche in quantite / a the tyme they haue in lye gro  
felyng a hache / they slepe with open mouth / a the hōles be schēn / a  
sometyme they are / as they were hōle by the wōnd of the myddese / a the  
of the myddese / a the is by cause of dyssol of the myddese / a the  
bech they slepe moch / a they extremities were colde / a they pulsed more lytel  
a the / a the yf they / lytell be schēn / a the wōnd / a the  
accorde / a the with þe wōnd / a the hōle / a the hōle / a the  
yf the thynges be the contrary it is god taken / a the hōle / a the  
postume of spās / yf so be þe this fowdele euill humours fall downe to þe  
a holde them at þe myddese / a the gūtes in to a gūte / a to a bange / it gen  
deth in to a postume / a lappete called pleurisie / a some of þe hote mater  
falleth downe in to þe fleshe on the rybbes / a then it gūth the postume  
unproperly is called pleurisie. Pleurisie is nothe agut a hote postume  
growyng on þe myddese / as I sayde / a the hōle / a the hōle / a the hōle

euery poste  
me is cau  
sed of col  
lection of  
euill hu  
mours.

þe lunges.

þe lunges.  
is an instru  
ment of þe  
spectus.

most complexed be most disposed to this sickness and comenly this syke  
 next is gendered in hyeme & in hete / and pynceppally when hyeme is moste  
 & wete / & bett grose & colde / for / or ouer hote / or ouer moste / for by these four  
 sayde causes are caused excess of euill humours & euill blode in mans body  
 whiche gendereth them in suche place of the body / that hynde here is lesse  
 myghty / and therof be caused euill humours & fumolytes styng up to the  
 hede / & somtyme when they fynde the poyrs open they holde them & gender  
 ther apouste in p hede / and yf they fynde the poyrs closed & spred / they dis  
 sende down in to p body / as wher as wher is in the case of a bath / for when the  
 fumolytes of a bath styng up to p rose / & fynde no way that he may flye out  
 about / they byslande downe agayne / so when these humours & mater bysland  
 downward in to p body / as afor sayde somtyme they draveth to p lunges / and  
 somtyme to the myddese / and somtyme to the rybbes / and than yf it be a bett  
 & pleurisie / it hath these .iiii. signes folowyn / p it to say / a stronge feuer /  
 & that continually by cause that the mater of the apouste is nere the herte /  
 also be hath short breath by cause of passon of the instruments of the spūs / p  
 is to say / of the luges / also be hath pyrchynge and payne in p syde / so moche  
 he may not moue hym self / beneth so that one syde / to that other syde / and p  
 is by cause that p apouste lyeth in the members p be netuous / p is to say  
 in p myddese / whiche myddese hath certayne synowes & baynes / whiche goeth  
 to the herte / and to the lunges. And take gode hede yf p forsayde pyrchynge  
 and payne in the syde come to p selfe paynt of the rybbes / that is to say / yf p  
 pyrchynge be felt to p extremities of p rybbes / it sheweth p mater of apouste  
 is about p myddese / & yf p pyrchynge be about p myddese p apouste is vnder  
 p myddese / for this sykenesse / p is to say pleurisie / p deth cometh rather in p  
 lesse syde than in p myddese / & that is by cause p lesse syde is not so hardely  
 hote. And in p begynnyng of this sykenesse or p mater be digested / ther cometh  
 on hym a drye cough / and somtyme he spattereth in p drye coughynge / & that is  
 a good signe / for it sheweth p mater is drye for to beche & waite away / &  
 wyl not longe tyme stonde / & p hand begynneth for to helpe & comfort hym  
 selfe / for to deliuer away p euill mater in p body / & for to cast it / & dryue it  
 out / with p cough / & with p spitting for p place ther it groweth. And whether  
 p mater in a pleurisie is caused of one humour / or els of many. Or els of  
 what humour / thus shal we knowe / yf p pleurisie come principally of blode  
 p patient hath lytel chylt & his pulse is great & large in styngyn on p pulse  
 byme / & his bryn is lytel betwixt / or Inopes / or hyanos / and it is a pette  
 grose. If it be caused of Coler / p face is cetering / & p spall ceterne is  
 drye cough / lene face / thynge or stronge hete / grete chylt / lene pulse & lene  
 brydes & dryght / yf it be caused of flume p face is whete / his spall is whete  
 he hath a moste cough / his body is faynt & feble of colour / & with a faynt  
 feuer / lytel chylt / his pulse is lene / & lene / & his bryn is whete .i. lyke the  
 pulse of an egge / & ther with grose & somtyme thyn & whete. And yf this  
 sykenesse .i. p pleurisie be caused of melancolie his face is blacke / or ledye  
 he hath also a drye cough / his body is lene & drye / with moche thyn / his pulse

what per  
 son be most  
 disposed to  
 haue the  
 pleurisie

signes of p  
 pleurisie.



125

[illegible]

theophil.

emoyodes





## Liber secundus.

the .ii. & .iii.  
specie of the  
Jaundes.

**Chymus.**

signes of  
Jaundes in  
the face.

**Chadens.**

The .ii. kynd of the Jaundes is called *Degehebit*. i. *mustela agrestis* a feld  
weasel. For when one hath this .ii. spiec of *Jaundes* his houn is greene as a  
felde/ as an *agrestis* grene/ & that is full of yelow. & is in the .ii. spiec of *Jaundes*  
writen in grete *Degehebit* in latyn *melancholia* anglice *melancholy*  
or els *blacke Jaundes*. *Deplanchina* is sayd of this wyde in grete *Deplanchina*  
i. *nigra* blacke/ & of this latyn wyde *Chymus*. i. *humours* as wha sayth a  
blacke humour/ For cyth as in *spyc* of the *Jaundes* *spyc* is grene/ &  
the *And* in the .ii. spiec it is more grenyllie and in the .iii. spiec/ *spyc* is most  
grene/ lyke as we se for when a thyng that is frowe grene/ which frowe grene  
in byrn is called *Spice Coler*/ or els *Spice Coler* as *Spice Coler* is called.  
Understande that *blacke Jaundes* is ever more caused/ principally of .ii.  
humours/ *spyc* blacke by way of kynd. I. of blacke *Coler* & of blacke *melancholia*  
colpe. *Deplanchina* is blacke of his owne kynd/ and *coler* is *spice*/ or *colpe* of  
of his owne kynde/ But when it is so/ *Coler* is full adust. i. all for shalt a  
byent/ through excess of unkynd hete/ that is both a fowle swart bull/ derbe  
dymme blackys coloure/ with a maner of grene/ as *Spice Coler* before. And in  
every of these .iii. kyndes or spies of *Jaundes* thou mayst knowe some from  
the other. For in the *spyc* spiec the eyen are yelowyshe and grenyllie. And  
in the .iii. spiec of the .iii. maner of *Jaundes* *spyc* eyen are asunder yelowyshe  
band/ as a hetyr face/ & under grene not band as grene/ but *spyc* face yelowyshe  
and grenyllie and potofed and blotche more than it was wont to be. Also  
the eyen and the *spyc* be infected somtyme through infection of agues/ &  
through infection of the body/ as in them that be infected in many *feveris*  
as somtyme by reason of ventosity of the blade/ somtyme through unkynd  
hete/ and somtyme through violence of *feveris* chaunging and turning in  
to *Coler* which can not be but when the humydrity of the body is excessive  
through excess of unkynd hete And than by cause that *Coler* is yelow by way  
of kynde through myght of the malice of the *feveris*/ it breth by a putter  
byn selfe in to the worst part of the body/ and principally to the face and  
to the eyen and ther infecteth them. And thus many maner of *Jaundes* ther  
be/ and on this wyse genyrd/ and on this wyse sheweth them in the face.  
Some *Jaundes* sayth and *Chadens* sayth/ that the .ii. last spies of the  
*Jaundes* are not genyrd in the liver/ nor in the beryn/ but onely the *spyc*  
spiec/ that is to say/ the yelow *Jaundes* And for this reason/ for than sholde  
the liver and the beryn be bothe through excess and violence of hete/ and  
of benyngnes and malice of the *feveris*. But the most part of *Jaundes*  
sayth/ & with them agreth *Chadens*/ that every maner *Jaundes* is genyrd  
byd principally in the liver/ for they say that is no humour principally genyrd  
byd but in the liver. For grene houn is an ague sheweth a *feveris*  
that is called *Degehebit* as some sayth it sholde be the *Campe* and *Chadens*  
thus the *spyc* and *spyc* say contrary. But the best way/ than mayst knowe  
by the *spyc* difference/ that *Degehebit* genyrd in the fourth parte of *Chymus*  
mologes/ the *spyc* *Chymus* and to the great most parte of all *Jaundes*  
of *Chadens* off many contraction *subita pectus eopopis*

aut nervorum cum dolore vehementi ex replecyone vel manissione nervorum  
causata. anglice Spasmus is the lesser contractyon of partyes in the body/  
comynge sodaynly in to the senewes w<sup>th</sup> grete payne/whiche contractyon is  
caused through replecyon of euill humours in the senewes/ or els through  
obscureng of hynde wyse in the senewes. ¶ Et status est maior spasmus/ sine  
uulsoz contractio nervorum/ a certuice vlyc ad doxum ex eadem causa. anglice  
Tetanus is the more spasm/ or els the more contractyon in the senewes/  
fro the batrell by hynde downe to the bathe/ with grete payne comynge of  
same cause that spasmus comyth of. ¶ Contractio in this purpose is the cre-  
pyngs and the cleuyngs together of the senewes/ and that is euermore cau-  
sed of colde/ and of consupcyon of the hynde substancyall humydrie in the  
body. Constacyon in big boke of Medicynes in y<sup>l</sup> last chapytre saue one sayth  
that yf Spasmus/ or Tetanus come sodaynly in one that is hole/ it cometh  
of replecyon/ yf it come after a feuer/ it cometh of ynnacion/ that is to say  
of cōsumpyon of the substancyall humydrie. ¶ If one haue the Crampe and  
no feuer it may be cured anon. If one haue the Crampe/ and ther come a fe-  
uer withall/ it is curable for it sheweth that the heat of the feuer wyll dis-  
solue and disperle and maye away the humours that causeth the Crampe.  
If the Crampe come after an ague/ it is geherly of deeth by reason y<sup>l</sup> myghte  
of hynde is waysted and cōsumed/ for the senewes mozte haue longe tyme to  
reconer them selfe/ and the hynde is not of myghte for to abyde so longe tyme  
wher through the patient is in geherly of deeth. ¶ Item grene byrn somdele  
towards hyndes/ sheweth maior Emptrice/ caused of aduysyon complet. Of  
iii. maner of Emptrice y<sup>l</sup> hath declared in. ca. de liquido colore. what difference  
is betwene aduysion/ & aduysion cōplet/ thou hast in. i. ca. of y<sup>l</sup> blacke colour.  
¶ And take hede yf the byrn apere grene in the more Emptrice/ it is full pe-  
ryous/ for it is a token of extynctyon & obscureng of hynde/ here caused of cō-  
plet aduysion/ as y<sup>l</sup> sayd right now/ wher through hynde. i. y<sup>l</sup> substance of y<sup>l</sup>  
body sayleth & perlyeth/ but more grace be. ¶ Item byrn sprell and grene  
sheweth deeth/ and namely yf it synche w<sup>th</sup> yf thou take a drope and poboere  
it on the nyle/ w<sup>th</sup> on the spryng/ w<sup>th</sup> on the hande/ and yf it blacketh and  
blayneth & perlyeth the place/ And this erule is also for to be understode  
in blacke colour/ and in blew as well as in grene. ¶ If the byrn be grene &  
moche in quantyte/ and his age be good/ and his byrne synche not/ nor bla-  
stet nor perlyeth not/ as a fore sayd/ yet ther maye be helpe of lyfe. ¶ Item  
byrn grene and moche in quantyte and maddy/ and with an euill sauour/  
sheweth bad peger and blowyng of some harme w<sup>th</sup> of some noble mether  
in the body through the which byrnng the substance and the humydrie of y<sup>l</sup>  
member is dissolued and pedyth to a way with the byrns/ and therfore it shew-  
eth deeth and that soone.

Tetanus

Contractio

If byrn be  
pore grene  
in the more  
Emptrice.

Byrn gre-  
ne & moche  
in quantite

de spelt secundus liber vltimus



# Liber Tertius

De Incipit Tertius Liber Vnde Primus Capitulum.

here begyn  
nethy the  
de boke tre  
tyng of  
cōtentes in  
byrn.



In the first boke it is treated & spoken principally both  
and in what maner wyle the byrne is gentled in maner  
with other thynges accordyng to be knowen in the secun  
de boke it is spoken principally of colours in byrne and  
of ther significacions with other thynges expedient  
(Nowe in this the thirde boke we thynke through the  
myght of god to speke of those thynges that are called

reveland and by  
the waye only  
and in the byrn  
shew by the col.

The fyrste  
reason.

The secōde  
reason.

The thirde  
reason.

The.iiii.  
reason.

in.iii. maner  
wyle byrn  
is made the  
he whan it  
shold be the  
ne.

the byrn is made  
the waye only  
and in the byrn  
shew by the col.

In latyn Contenta byrne anglis thynges containyd in byrn wherfore vnder  
stande that all tractours of this faculte sayth ech othre It is more sweete  
and more certayne Judging or determining by the bodys that is to saye by  
those thynges that shew them and apere in byrn than it is by colours of  
the byrne and that for divers reasons. ¶ For colour of the byrne is a thyng  
that is but shadowyng and superfluous and a thyng that now is and now  
it is not for it labeth and vanissheth and passeth awaye as every alteracyō  
of the body. ¶ Also the colour of the byrne maketh the diffinition of certayne  
to saye in his Judgement for many tymes by byrne now the colour of byrn  
now the body of the byrn sheweth now certifieth not the diffinition what hu  
mour is cause of the sickness for somtyme by the colour and by substance  
of the byrn baryeth as somtyme by cause of strectnes of pores of the byr  
nes and somtyme by cause of largenes of the pores of the byrnes and some  
tyme by cause of strectnes of the wayes of the byrn and somtyme by cause  
of largenes of the wayes of the byrnes. ¶ Also the colour and the substance  
of the byrne baryeth somtyme by cause of digestion and somtyme by  
cause of indigestion. And so by cause of these portites many tymes whan by  
byrn shold be thyne it is thicke and whan it shold be thicke it is thyne  
And also whan the byrn shold be well coloured it is discoloured and whan  
it shold be discoloured it is well coloured that is to saye whan the byrn shol  
de be hie in colour it is lowe and so in many such other portites. ¶ For the  
where I sayd before the byrn is thicke whan it shold be thyne And that  
maye be in three maner wyle. As first by cause of aduysion of humours  
mours that are colde in byrns and of humours that are hie in byrns. ¶  
¶ Somtyme by cause of lesenes of byrns as whan byrns is not of myght  
nor of power for to receyve and for to withstande the byrns in the body. ¶  
And also somtyme the byrn is thicke by cause that they byrns woulde be  
strecte and narrowe. ¶ Somtyme somtyme the byrn is discoloured whan it  
shold be well coloured as whan humours are in the byrns shold be hie  
of humours by hie in colour and whan it is lowe many tymes by maye be  
in.iii. maner wyle. ¶ As somtyme by cause of the matter of the humours is left  
up in to the hede as it saith in Iteyrie. Somtyme by cause of aduysion &  
consumpcion of the mater in the byrns. ¶ Somtyme by cause of turnyng  
and chaungyng of the humours in the body. ¶ Somtyme by cause of consump  
cion of humours hie in the body which humours hie in many tymes consume

[illegible]



CP. - 10/11/14  
pharyngitis & tonsillitis  
in the lower part  
of the throat.

put put cer-  
rie. in the  
rest of the

no hy fcer-  
cle is put-  
put.

**pale cattle**

### Red circle

a circle of  
 the school of  
 law.  
 The 2nd of  
 Epiphany, a  
 martyr  
 cry of the  
 blythe.













reason of that matter humours is / and the labour of the members of the place  
 be so much that more humours be / and thus the greynes be gathered and  
 formed in the lower belly and through the greynes them selfe in þe bypne.  
 ¶ It sheweth this for a cause whyne / that if the greynes be in the rectie  
 of the bypne / or in a litle byneth the rectie / and yet they with anone the  
 bypne of moving of the bypnall go of behind downe to the bottom / or nee-  
 bath to the bottom of the bypne / and so they ascende by agayne to þe place  
 wher they were before / it sheweth that the febrer is in the hede / caused of  
 such countenance matter / as I have sayd. ¶ Whoso this small greynes as of sayd  
 be within the rectie / and yet they with a shaking of moving of the bypnall  
 abyde byneth þe rectie / and aske not by agayne ther they were afore þe ma-  
 king / it is a token of a flux of humours / cold and crumly / by coming out  
 of the hede / to other parties of the body / & after as the greynes holdeth them  
 byre / lower in the bypne / so is the febrer in the body byre or lower.

To knowe  
a flux of bu  
mouts co  
myngs fro  
the hede by  
shakyng of  
the vryn.

[illegible]

A cloud  
of a sky in  
the horizon  
under the  
line of  
horizon.

a sky in be-  
the wether ex-  
cess of vn-  
kynde here  
of the liues  
of spiri-  
tuals.

whā s kye  
signy peth  
schenes of  
the spūals  
or of s ly-  
net.

a sky signi-  
fying peep  
flying of  
totality.



A lype the  
royng calo  
faccyon of  
the lyuer.  
is . . .

Blank ce-  
chech.

spume of  
froch i vii.  
a froch lye  
npyrnyng  
wynde.

p. ii. kpnbe  
of froch.

p. iii. maner  
of froch.

acotpmig  
froch.

froch cle-  
uig to the  
cercle.

gylbertus  
alleggerth.

the lyuer, that is the ay. . . the moche lye . . .  
it is called . . .  
and more . . .  
that it is much . . .  
froch on face . . .  
gathered as it were a . . .  
the lyre . . .  
be . . .

**S** . . .  
of . . .  
of froch . . .  
that is . . .  
small . . .  
man . . .  
me . . .  
moche . . .  
Concluse . . .  
all . . .  
foye . . .  
that . . .  
ly . . .  
in . . .  
that . . .  
the . . .  
as . . .  
by . . .  
there . . .  
gyl . . .  
chul . . .







[illegible]

To direct  
Spottis  
from an bu  
monte by  
making of  
a bynall.

**Toknoob  
Games. i.  
rotf mattr.**

b. makes  
hope you  
may know  
we of what  
infernal  
is cometh  
from: 46

John that is in  
strongly full  
to the very bottom  
of the barrel

it might not  
be the true  
one but the hole is  
bottom of the canal

1940









fatness on  
the byne.

to knowe  
fathnes by  
chaffynge  
by twene  
ioutfigets

fathnes co  
meth some  
myne ston  
at the body  
is somtyme  
it commeth  
but from  
one party.

Salute from the rising. Salt & sulphur in the lungs fit the body with. it draws to the rising  
 height after the water. it is but little increased to the body of the body: it not raised as a gas  
 the body not 12 weeks / must fall in the body. the quality great.





photo may  
 know a  
 pollster  
 take in-  
 mout. n. m  
 wet rope.

[illegible]

As it were muddie/ or Earth in to limel pouthet. ¶ Also Spissatilis is knowen  
by colour of y<sup>e</sup> bryn/ For Spissatilis hath bryn much more right in colour For  
Spissatilis sheweth but lytel rayones of humours/ or els none But humors cru-  
dus. hath alwaye bryn rathe & indigested & very seide it apereth subcitrin/ or  
citrin/ & though it do apereth so cythis y<sup>e</sup> bryn berthe & dime But yf it be to an  
humour subcitrin/ or citrin/ it is a good token/ for it sheweth y<sup>e</sup> it wyl not co-  
tyne longe. ¶ Gilbertus sayth y<sup>e</sup> Sannes/ which is spokt of in y<sup>e</sup> vii. ca. of  
this. lii. boke is called a humour in bryn And also y<sup>e</sup> this humour/ which this  
ca. spebeth of/ is called a humour in bryn/ & how thou shalt know y<sup>e</sup> one from  
y<sup>e</sup> other/ thus reberth he & sayth y<sup>e</sup> same humour toliche is called Sannes eue-  
more syncheth/ & this humour/ which this ca. spebeth of syncheth not/ For  
as he sayth Sannes is a humour y<sup>e</sup> is corrupt & rotten/ & this humour whiche  
this ca. spebeth of is a rathe humour not rotten. ¶ Some sayth y<sup>e</sup> this moide  
humour is somtyme taken in general/ and somtyme in speciell. ¶ It is ta-  
ken in general/ for every one of y<sup>e</sup> liii. humours/ but it is not so taken in this  
ca. and whan it is taken in pecyall/ it is taken for one of y<sup>e</sup> liii. humours/ as  
for a humour of Fleume or of Melancolie rathe & indigen/ and in this maner  
wyse it is take here/ whan it is so that the humours of coler passeth out with  
the bryn/ than by reason that he is so lyght & so subtyll in his owne hynde he  
is so lytell incorpo. at to the bryn/ y<sup>e</sup> it may not be petyrnyed/ And therfore  
this ca. spebeth only of crude or rathe humours Fleumatyke/ or Melancolye/  
& of ther significacions/ this humour in bryn somtyme apereth aboute in the  
bryn/ and than it cometh of the maters of lyfe/ And somtyme this humour  
apereth in the myddes of the bryn/ & than it cometh of the nuttyrtyfe Some-  
tyme this humour apereth in the grounde of the bryn/ & than it cometh from  
the generatyfe. And so as the humour apereth higher or lower in y<sup>e</sup> vniuersal/  
so it sheweth the lehenes to be in the body higher or lower. ¶ Also this hu-  
mour as aynsayd beyng in the bothe of y<sup>e</sup> bryn/ sheweth fragancia/ whiche  
fragancia is genished of rathe humours gathering about y<sup>e</sup> necke of y<sup>e</sup> bladder  
whiche rathe humours cometh y<sup>e</sup> fragancia/ & than foryne pte of y<sup>e</sup> same cupill  
humours mixeth them to the bryn/ & passeth out that is a rathe & indigen  
by reason wherof that humour is lyght & drye and draweth toward y<sup>e</sup> po-  
stern of the vniuersal.

Epistolis  
is known  
by 6 byrn.

Gilbertus  
sayth.

**Humour  
Coleridge.**

# Sotragury

**O**f Ingulme byne / Of blode in bynne / For both serueth the Co-  
ment openeth the fowre / which becometh of the fowre with the  
byne / other it cometh of the blode / or it is together the fowre / in els it co-  
meth of a byne that is called the byle / in fowre part in the fowre ch.  
Of Ingulme byne / Of blode in bynne / For both serueth the Co-  
ment openeth the fowre / which becometh of the fowre with the  
byne / other it cometh of the blode / or it is together the fowre / in els it co-  
meth of a byne that is called the byle / in fowre part in the fowre ch.  
Of Ingulme byne / Of blode in bynne / For both serueth the Co-  
ment openeth the fowre / which becometh of the fowre with the  
byne / other it cometh of the blode / or it is together the fowre / in els it co-  
meth of a byne that is called the byle / in fowre part in the fowre ch.

the first the black stuff. which is the rising  
all distinguished by the paint and the paper. affords



## Liber Tertius.

peed is because that the bladder from whence it come a where it whas gen-  
 derd is cold in kynd and therefore it is not of myght for to purge nor cleanse  
 hym self from superfluytes of cruell humours and for that cause it goth to  
 bochum of the byrnall and is lytell Incorporated with the byrne And also  
 by the same reason and cause about sayde blode somtyme correteth in the  
 bladder whiche chaufeth the same to synck in the byrnall. And also whan  
 that the bladder is cold in kynde as about sayd And also peraventure the  
 nature of the man as of the woman is colder & feebler than þe blode gethereth  
 in to spith and captuynge by reason wherof many tymes moche people dye  
 And also moche people were that this defeailes where the stone but it is not  
 so and as Galienus sayth such blode cometh from one moche lyke a water  
 letche in colour And Specius sheweth that who so pfecte blode clappes or  
 cloddys as many as he shal as the both blouys and lialys and yet the byrn  
 have by reason ther of a newell fauour yf cometh blacker on and collyerous  
 of the bladder. ¶ If blode come of the reynes it is not so troubled as whan  
 it cometh of the bladder & the þe parent seith pyrchunge and payne in þe  
 reynes and ther aboute and not in the stone & the blode is more clere than  
 whan it cometh of the bladder If that blode come of the lower the blode is  
 pure and clere and the parent seith gethe payne in þe reyne yde. Somtyme  
 blode cometh from the hyle as whan the hyle as els some of his byrnes be  
 broken or bryled or murthered than is the blode clere & pure as it is whan  
 it cometh of the lyuer but then is the payne and the pyrchunge of þe parent  
 in the cryge ther is to say in the backe that is to say in the. vii. lout of the  
 cryge bone telling from beneath the navel as I sayd in the. ii. boke. xiii. ca.  
 de. Inopon. ¶ Some surmisse that blode in byrne cometh somtyme of the  
 bladder and somtyme of the reynes And likewise of þe hyle & somtyme of þe  
 lyuer And whan it cometh of the one and whan it cometh from þe other it is  
 knowen in. ii. maner wyse as how after coloure that is to say it is knowen  
 by the substance of the blode by the colour of the blode by þe fauour of þe bla-  
 de by the byrnes as laste by the nature of the blode to þe grende of þe byrnall  
 Also it is knowen by the payne that the parent seith in þe byrnes fro whens  
 þe blode cometh. ¶ It is knowen by the substance of the blode for whan blode cometh fro  
 þe bladder it is troubled as it were gubred and clappes of blode whiche be  
 caused by cause of the coldnes of the bladder. But yf that blode come of þe re-  
 nes or of the hyle or of the lyuer It is not troubled nor cloddys as it  
 is whan it cometh from the bladder and that is by reason that the member  
 be more heate & full of byrnes and hath more heat & whan the bladder hath  
 a though þe member be not full of byrnes as the hyle & lyuer whiche they have made  
 byrnes in them For they are full of byrnes. All this is knowen by his colour  
 For yf þe blode be of þe bladder as of þe reynes or of the hyle or of the lyuer  
 that is withouten byrnes for þe hyle & lyuer is a more blacker & more  
 cloddys than the bladder yf þe blode is of the bladder it is more  
 blacke & browner & thicker than whan it cometh of the reynes For þe bladder  
 is farther from þe heat. ¶ Also it is knowen by the fauour For yf the blode

## Galienus.

**Зрочас:**

**Dəhp blode  
cometh in  
wypn / it is  
knowē. v.  
maner wy.  
se.**





grand fontaine  
by ag-ss.

1975

of the grand  
 of the grand  
 of the grand  
 of the grand

01 1211570

will brede and lesse and vanyshes away. ¶ If dede is that the grauell appere  
in the vyne and sheweth in somtyme smaller and smaller / or els somtyme  
smaller and somtyme greater / so that they be lesse and lesse / it sheweth that  
the stone is in byrding. ¶ If the grauell appere in the vyne & sheweth by in some  
tyme greater and greater / somtyme in smaller / and somtyme greater / so that they  
shewe for the most parte more greater then lesse / it sheweth that the stone is  
waxing and consuming. ¶ If the grauell appere cleere & smooth as it were  
purged and polished / it sheweth that the stone is fulle woren and byed / thus  
sayth the Commentator upon Galien and Galienus sheweth the same / and yf it  
be so that thou may not well perceyue by the colour of the grauell of a playn /  
whether it come from the bladder or els from the vyne / take this expery-  
ment that Galienus receyved in his comment / that is to say / cleve that grauell  
through a linnen clothe small and cleere in two dayes tyme / and yf that same  
grauell come of the vyne it is faine as powder of dust / and also redde by its  
colour / and yf that grauell come of the bladder it sheweth greener as it were  
very small graine of sande / and also the grauell is whiter the. ¶ And  
also take stafes & candles some cutteth to such / that grauell may appere  
in vyne of man in v. moneth wyth / though the man have not the stone / all  
somtyme by reason of the stonys action / and somtyme by reason of a badel ve-  
cion / and somtyme by cause of a feint quaterne / and somtyme by cause of a  
drye woman / and somtyme by cause of a cheyven passio / and the reason why  
I have deduced this. ¶ There be some surgeons that sayth that the stone is  
made by galled by of the thynge that is to say of violence of greivous

[illegible]

relations  
like betw.

1944

2

**TO KNOW**  
Waterfall

these 14,000

**cyons clme**

from the

types of

of dye has

11.04.18.

July 20

here of spe-

both 310-

СТАВ.

2

10

1950

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----

100

F 267204 E

စမ္မာဒါနံ

100

10

10

100

100





sayd resolutions lyke small here shewe manifest destruction of all the body.  
¶ If that same here appeer without a fever and Indigestion, that it sheweth  
consumption but of the lungs only, thus sayth the Commentours upon Galien  
Gelis sayth Gilbert sayth that still as here cometh not of the cyrpes, but only of those  
members that be sencting and signing, as for women and as for men a bey-  
nes and a ciccia and such other members and parties in the body, as they  
be caused by reason of cruel humours, greffe and bycous beyngs in the grete  
beynes.

Gelis sayth

A content in  
pysmache  
lyke brand

¶ **E**stima byne, be whete resolutione aperyng in the byne most lyke  
whete byne, as sheweth of a mines bede. Estima is byne. And fur-  
fur is also shadder of the shaddes of a mines bede, whiche furfur be whete,  
by reason that the member that they round of is whete, that is to say, p bladder  
And this resolutione be caused through exesse of vnyande hete of p blad-  
der, as when exesse of vnyande hete of the bladder hath consumed and wasted  
the vnyande of the bladder. Chanyseth comes and sheweth of the body of  
p bladder, as comes of shaddes after they be repelyed they be put out by vields  
of hete, as in pash foptheking to the byne. ¶ When a furfur resolutione is as  
bynde of shaddes, as in the byne. ¶ Then they sheweth other consump-  
tion and fehenes of all the body, as els but of the bladder only. And p fur-  
fur shewe in the byn of man, haung a fever and Indigestion, it sheweth  
consumption of all the body. And if they shewe in the byn of man, that m  
haung no fever nor Indigestion, it sheweth consumption of p bladder only.  
¶ Fatta burn and shaddes therein sheweth a shabbed bladder, a a consump body  
And take heed, that estuma is not furfur, sheweth consumption of all p  
body, as I sayd right now. It is no more, but even the 4. spece of the cyrpe.  
Furfur are somtyme caused through longitate, shewyng cogrdes p bladder  
And somtyme through hete of the bladder, wasting all most parties therein  
and shewyng the grete parties, and forsooth comes and sheweth, as a fore  
sayd. But take heed, that estuma is not furfur, as furfur, or Ceynoides  
betokened the cyrpe, they haue caused of colde, but only of vnyande hete.  
¶ Gilbert sayth that Aquinas a furfur a Ceynoides come all, all somtyme of  
one member, or of one place, or of the bladder, or of the piales. ¶ But  
Epocras and Galienus, whiche be doctours of medicine in Anthonia, that is  
to say, of the Junes parties and members in man, sayth that Ceynoides  
cometh of the members that be round, that is to say, fleshy and longe and  
bynde and most, as be the piales. And they say that Aquinas cometh of m-  
bers that be wetty and signing, as the ciccia and p shewen and the bey-  
nes, and such other. And all other furfur cometh of those members that be  
of bynde, as be betwene both.

Fever Et-  
he

Epocras &  
Galienus  
sayth:

¶ **C**ontent in pash foptheking to the byne. ¶ When a furfur resolutione is as  
bynde of shaddes, as in the byne. ¶ Then they sheweth other consump-  
tion and fehenes of all the body, as els but of the bladder only. And p fur-  
fur shewe in the byn of man, haung a fever and Indigestion, it sheweth  
consumption of all the body. And if they shewe in the byn of man, that m  
haung no fever nor Indigestion, it sheweth consumption of p bladder only.  
¶ Fatta burn and shaddes therein sheweth a shabbed bladder, a a consump body  
And take heed, that estuma is not furfur, sheweth consumption of all p  
body, as I sayd right now. It is no more, but even the 4. spece of the cyrpe.  
Furfur are somtyme caused through longitate, shewyng cogrdes p bladder  
And somtyme through hete of the bladder, wasting all most parties therein  
and shewyng the grete parties, and forsooth comes and sheweth, as a fore  
sayd. But take heed, that estuma is not furfur, as furfur, or Ceynoides  
betokened the cyrpe, they haue caused of colde, but only of vnyande hete.  
¶ Gilbert sayth that Aquinas a furfur a Ceynoides come all, all somtyme of  
one member, or of one place, or of the bladder, or of the piales. ¶ But  
Epocras and Galienus, whiche be doctours of medicine in Anthonia, that is  
to say, of the Junes parties and members in man, sayth that Ceynoides  
cometh of the members that be round, that is to say, fleshy and longe and  
bynde and most, as be the piales. And they say that Aquinas cometh of m-  
bers that be wetty and signing, as the ciccia and p shewen and the bey-  
nes, and such other. And all other furfur cometh of those members that be  
of bynde, as be betwene both.

# Liber Tertius. Fo. lviil.

**C**rynoides & fuctura be moche lyke / save  $\beta$  Crynoides be more than is fuctura both in length and in byrde and in thynnes And Crynoides is sayd of this wyde Crynoid.  $\beta$  Crynoides. iii. parte of a whete greene / grete and curll grounde And it is sayd of this wyde ydow / that is to say forma a shappe / as a forme  $\beta$  Crynoides be moche of  $\beta$  shappe.  $\beta$  If suche telolurions apere in the byrn of man hauring a fever / it betokeneth long sekenes / as the frut Crike.  $\beta$  This sayd Crynoides is caused / as fuctura is caused / save that fuctura cometh for the most part of the bladder / as I sayd afore in the nytte Chavytte. And Crynoides cometh onely of members that be more thicke oz depe than is the bladder / as of members of the byest and of  $\beta$  spuales.  $\beta$  And also Crynoides be caused through moze byolce of unkynd hete than fuctura.  $\beta$  And therefore Crynoides sheweth moze consumpcyon & destruccyon and wastynge of all the boty / than doth fuctura / And therefore whan Crynoides aperech in byrn / than it betokeneth the thyrde spice of the Crike.  $\beta$  As Ipoctas sayth Crynoides be comonly whyte for they come of members that comonly be whyte / that is to say / of the spuales / but somtyme they be redyssh / or blackyssh / as it were betwene blacke and rede / by cause of Inccencion / that is to say / byemmyng and shalldryng of the blode / and than is  $\beta$  papyent in grete perille.  $\beta$  And whan Crynoides be massy & thicke / but  $\beta$  moze grace be / ther is but deeth.  $\beta$  And therefore the greter that Crynoides be the moze perill of deeth is in the papyent. For the greter the Crynoides be  $\beta$  moze wastynge and consumpcyon of the spuales thet signifi / For they signifi the. iii. spyes of the Crike.

Crynoides is a comen in byrn.

Crynoides sheweth moze consumpcyon than doth fuctura.

as Ipoctas sayth.

De Squama. XV. Capitulum.

**S**quama & Metalia & Deterloides are all one / anglice shales / that be most lyke the scales of a frysche that we calle a golowm.  $\beta$  Therefore take good heed that Squame & fuctura & Crynoides be moche lyke / save  $\beta$  Squame be lesser than Crynoides And fuctura be lesse and channer than Crynoides / & on the same maner wyse  $\beta$  fuctura is caused / & same maner wyse is Squame caused / save that fuctura cometh of the bladder / and Squame and Crynoides cometh of the spuales.  $\beta$  To knowe whan fuctura cometh of the bladder / thus shall thou knowe.  $\beta$  If fuctura holde byrn lowe in the byrn / that is to say / from the myddes downward / it sheweth that fuctura cometh from  $\beta$  bladder / & specially if the papyent have reyne about the shere.  $\beta$  If that fuctura be byrn high in the byrn / that is to say / in the myddes / or bywarde / thet cometh from the spuales.  $\beta$  If thet occupie al the byrn both above and beneath / and in the myddes also / it sheweth that thet fuctura cometh both from the bladder and also from the spuales. For whan bynde humydyte of the bladder or of the spuales is consumyd & matted through unkynde hete / than shales and shuffes fall away from them / right as we see / that beafalle from shalved colles And therefore thet is lyell duective in Judge ment betwene Squame fuctura & Crynoides / save  $\beta$  fuctura sheweth moze bynde hete to be in the body / and moze consumpcyon than doth Squame.

Squame & byrn be moche lyke shales of frysche.

De Squama. XV. Capitulum.



# Libet Tertius.

The. i. p. ii.  
p. iii. spices  
of the feuer  
Crispe.

And Crynoides sheweth more than both Sulfura / And therefore Aquame  
sheweth the first spice of the Crispe / and Sulfura the. ii. spice / and Crynoides  
the. iii. spice. And who seares with the Crispe / or be moche disposed ther to /  
he maketh in his byrn shales / shales / or Crynoides / or both / or els all. iii.  
¶ If a man make shales he is curable ynough / If he make shales he is bac  
de to be cured But yf he make Crynys / he is incurable. ¶ Ther be summe  
Suctours that treatheth of Aquame / Sulfura all vnder one And also ther  
be be summe Suctours that treatheth of Aquame / Sulfura / Crynoides all  
vnder one / thus endeth the Chapter of Aquame.

De Arbores. XVI. Capitulum.

here begyn  
neth a con  
tent / lyke  
small whice  
mottes in

**A**ttorne / or attorne / be small and whyte rounde bodres in the byrn /  
whiche be small and lytel / as motys in the sonne / And therefore they  
are called Attorne / or Attorne. Attornus is a mote in the sonne. ¶ Chan  
vnderstande that suche small whyte motys / when they apere in the byrn of  
man / or of woman / they shewe comonly the gowte in man / but not in womē  
¶ Therefore take hede that when they shewe them in the byrn / other they  
apere in the bothum of the byrn / or in the myddes / or about on the byrn / or  
els ouer al the body of the byrn. ¶ If they shewe them in the nether region of  
the byrnall / they signyfy the gowte to be in the nether region of the body.

¶ Of the. iii. Regions in the body of man. and of the. iii. Regions in byrns  
answering to the. iii. Regions of man / you may see in the. ii. boke. the. vii.  
Chapptre of Scapros. ¶ If those small motes apere in the myddes of byrn  
they signyfy the gowte / to be in the myddes of the body / that is to say / from  
the myddes of the loyns to the myddes. ¶ If those motes holde them in the  
ouer Region of the byrn / they signyfy the leuens to be in the ouer parties of  
the body. ¶ If those small motes holde them throughtout the body of the byrn

attorne be  
caused cho  
rough fal  
ling of euyl  
humours  
fro p hede.

it signyfyeth that all the body is taken with the gowte. ¶ Therefore  
Attorne be caused and genored through continual distillation / that is to  
say / through continual coming and flowing of euyl humours out of the  
hede / falling upon sadde members / as upon the body / and other members  
whiche be harde and sadde / as on the parties / and on the senewes / and on suche  
other. ¶ And these fore / by the small motes be whyte / because  
that they come of such members / that be whyte of kynde / wherefore they shewe  
them after the colour of the members / from whom they be deciled / come  
from. And also they be small and lytel / by this reason / that is to say / when  
kynde hets worketh in sadde and harde members / for to deloue / deire / and  
decrease the mater of the gowte / in as much as in byrns Chanys it be so  
that kynde hets be set in his working / not of myght / Chanys it be so  
and deire of that euyl colde humours that be may / and that it is resolved  
and deired by small whyte resolutions / and in byrns also these resolutions  
be small and lytel / and also the greter that those resolutions do apere / for  
better when it is for the more that those resolutions be / the more it sheweth  
that kynde is of myght / for to deire / deire / that mater. ¶ And also vnder







and also not  
in every body  
with such  
as in the  
natural part  
consisting of  
or flesh of y<sup>e</sup> body

Hande & Arthome. I. these small round mores in the byrd of women sheweth  
meny thynges/as thou shalt see And therefore woman byrd/ namely with  
Arthome is called of auctours froward byrns But in men suche byrns with  
Arthome be euertyme only & ready enough to Judge. And therefore under  
stande & suche resolucions in womens byrd sheweth. al. thynges/ other they  
shewe that & spiales be taken in the goate/ of concepyng of a Chylde/ or  
elsethey shewe feblenes of the moder. Then take this for a ewle That yf  
Arthomy speer in womens byrd/ so & the byrd be thicke/ & mainly doth ward  
And yf within litle tyme afterwarde they gather & clodde them together:  
It sheweth & the hath concepyed. And as Auerenna sayth yf the shewe in  
byrd a supple body wyllynglye/ moche toward the cause of the/ or brynought  
lyke & than yf those Arthoms. I. resolucions lyke moles/ shewe the rebryll. It  
is a very token & the hath concepyed a man chylde/ for freddyngnes of those  
small resolucions. I. Arthome betokeneth myght a stryght & beem of kynd here  
Al & Arthome seme as they were many blotchy/ it signifieth & woman to  
be concepyed with a mayd Chylde. For those colours in Arthome sheweth  
seyntnes & feblenes of kynd here/ yf suche resolucions speer in a woman's byrd  
beyng not concepyed/ it signifieth & woman to haue the goate. As speeth  
byuers auctours of whilke/ and also of surgery/ that the goate byedeth in  
byuers places of the body/ but most in the Joynts/as in the Elbowes/ in  
Joyntes Somtyme in the Syngres Somtyme in the Thumbe Somtyme in  
yf tell Synger And somtyme in the Ance Somtyme in the Pale And som  
tyme in the Toos. And it is called Goutte/ for as moche as it is caused of  
humours gattyng that is to say/ dropping and falling lyell and lyell/ in  
to places and parties of the body. Somtyme it cometh of humours colde  
Rheumatyke and viscons/ and then it is called the colde goate/ and than the  
paryent hath stronge gnawing and angwysch/ and the place wher & goate  
is in/ is pale or palish/ and the byrd of the paryent is discoloured and wylly  
Arthome/ that is to say/ small mores. And somtyme it is caused of humours  
hote/as of humours of blode/ and of red Colours mixed together. As Coma  
tyme sayth in his Antidotaris in the vi. booke the xviij. Chapter. That  
such a goate is called the hote goate. Also in the fore goate the paryent  
feleth more payne/ than he doth in the colde goate. And also in the hote  
goate/ the byrd is more blakish & hard/ than it is in the colde goate.  
Also somtyme the goate is in the  
ryght syde of a man/ and somtyme in the left syde/ and somtyme in both  
sydes/ but yf it be in the left syde of a man/ it is more payne/ than it is in the  
right syde. Coma tyme in the fore goate the paryent  
the xij. Chapter. sayth that the Goutte and the Phagete byedeth commonly  
in them that lyeth softly/ and in moche cold/ and in vntyme/ that  
is to say/ in them that wylly not be dryng/ nor Spedyng/ to purge  
and menylye cupill humours And also it byedeth moche in them that eat  
moche/ and byrd moche/ for superfluite of such thynges causeth cupill  
moche in them. And also it byedeth in them also that be of vntyme

Token of  
concepyng  
of a chylde

the goate

Differens  
betwyne  
hote goate  
& the colde  
goate



# Liber Tertius.

colde complexion and specially of they be moche excess of mete and drynke

**Sperma  
vyrine.**

**S**perma vyrine. The sperme as I sayd in the II. booke. Is white color  
is white blode. Nature of man as best decidid of 4 parts substance  
of all the members and lyues of the body. whiche sperme is white by cause  
that all the members and lyues of the body of whiche it cometh of be white  
by cause of 4 things. First is not cold but by cause of blode and by cause also of great  
agitation that is to say of moving and traveling and coursing. And also  
by reason that 4 members of whiche principally he cometh of is white. 1. of  
the braine (which is white) and secretly that sperme hath his first grounde and be-  
gynning at the principall member of life that is to say in the braine and  
so passeth forth to the generatrix that is to say to the testicles to the ballois  
floures being with them water and lynde of every member being betwene 4  
vyrine and the generatrix vyre and abul to make generacion. Somtymes  
the ballois floures of man and woman be schafed rough and wrought and  
knoden as well as beunge through which transpyle in moving of the body  
and through myght and weighing and lyving in lynde than other whyle.  
Some of this sperme passeth forth to the vyre. For when ones sperme passeth  
from him some parts thereof cleaveth and hangeth about the sides of 4 vyre  
of man or of the member of a woman lyke as thou seest when foules lye down  
is pured out of a ball as cle lyke as lyche passeth out of a gutter. After  
that the water transpyle it along right so after passing out of sperme when  
one uneth vyre the vyre becometh both with him that sperme of water that  
cleaveth a lyght in the sides of the member and beyng in his waye than  
the sperme cleaveth within the vyre. And somtymes 4 sperme opereth  
in the vyre. Lyche lyche small as lyche fyth of ones nose when one hath the  
nose somtymes it opereth long and large and somtymes short and small.  
Then when cleaveth one of sperme passeth in a vyre. It sheweth that the  
of be stur made that vyre have inly a pollution that is to say that nature  
hath passeth from them. And though company of women or els in dyspung  
when one is a lyche as cle through vyre out of nature from man or wo-  
man fully agone lynde. And somtymes nature passeth out of the member  
of a man or of a woman. The member of a shewing and dropping out 4 part  
of a vyre. And that sperme passing out of nature is caused  
of great abundance of blode and particularly in young folke that be canche  
and full of nature. For when sperme as nature is so plentiful in the body  
it passeth out of the member as cle lyche. Also somtymes the sperme  
passeth out of the member as cle lyche. And that is by cause of feblenes in  
the member and nature. And somtymes it passeth in the folke. For oftentimes in  
lyche the member of a lyche to debilitye feble and hard is not of myght to  
be with be the lyche is glideth away unknowing to the parte. And this  
passeth out of the member that are in the falling cuppe. And they that have  
the member of a lyche that have the member of a lyche. And they that have

haue the pallie in theyr coddes. ¶ Allomany tyms folke haue it by cause of feblenes & fayntnes & dednesse of the senwes/as in them that be seely and gree them moche to penace and fastyng/ by reason wherof bynde is not of myght to receyue fiede. ¶ These bynde is that wherbyn speeth in bynde in bynde tope/ for so tyne is strength byn in the bynde in many small lyrell gobbets/ byng not incorporate in the bynde/ but holdyng byn in the grounde of the bynde And that sheweth that be/ as the thes mabe f bynde was late as luche dede If luche mater shew bi in good grete pries/ moche lyue les hangyng and copping/ and but lyrell of some dele in the bynde/ that is to say/ not fully shaggyng in the grounde/ but drawyng toward the grounde/ it sheweth passyng of nature other tope/ than by small dede of wil of woman.

De De Chiribus. XVIII. Capitulum.

**A**lthowgh bynde/ as byn in bynde/ is small resolucions. ¶ Small bodies of lyrell parpes gadying and holdyng them in the ground of the bynde lyke a place of allyes of powder. ¶ And euer whan allyes apere in bynde the bynde is temp in coloure/ that is to say/ temp in myght and dede in colour. ¶ Then whan the bynde sheweth byn temp in coloure with a myner of powder of allyes in the bottom blacke/ as blacke/ they signify ¶ Emoroides/ or Trepters/ or condolomans/ or flem/ anglice/ the Emoroides/ or the Trepters/ or the Condolomans/ or the flem. ¶ The reason why bynde is temp in coloure/ is by cause of excess of the lancholre. For whan the lancholre blode is grete abundaunt in the body/ as it is in them that hath this defea/ is as of sayd/ than is kynde here strangled and stuffed/ by reason a bee of the digestyon of the pacient is lette and fordone And by reason f the pacient is let of his digestyon/ his bynde is temp/ that is to say/ temp in coloure ¶ The pouer of the resolucions in the bynde is the lancholre. ¶ The fournggys the dyegges of the lancholre blode/ by puer to the bladder/ which puer to the bynde/ is by cause f the lancholre/ of whom they be gedged/ is kyndly recte a heap/ they byn to them downe to f boche of the bynde/ f also by cause of f qualites of mela colre/ they be blacke in coloure/ f lancholre Emoroides whiche I spake of be taken in. ¶ Whiche byn to the bynde/ for they be beyndes that cometh from hille/ to the new hole/ and ende in the old hole. ¶ And also Emoroides is taken for f schenes of the bynde/ f this Emoroides is said of this wynde Emach/ that is to say/ blode/ and of this wynde f. ¶ I have a cours of atfnyng/ as wholowith a cours of blode/ for that bynde f I spake of ryght now/ that be called Emoroides be fenned greatly/ whiche bynde replet with the lancholre blode/ whiche the lancholre blode is whiche be fenned in f hyle of the bynde/ whiche bynde/ for they be fenned in the bynde/ byn paces of manes body/ to colde kynde in the bynde/ and f cause of coldnes therof/ and of his paces/ they fenned the lancholre blode/ and congeleth in the bynde/ and whan the bynde is fenned/ it is fenned and replet the swelle and lancholre/ in some that the vides of the bynde are knotty/ and fenned byn to the bynde/ as fenned byn to the bynde.

These be byn with a content called allyes byn

Howe the Emoroides be caused.



and sometime these beynes caused by cause of grete pience of melancoly blod  
Emozades that is in them And sometime by cause of grete hete quatenyng and payne.  
And also they beyn somtyme by cause of compassyon / but than the blod  
cometh out in grete quantite / and this fekenes is caused most comenly / ether  
of colde and hard freyng as longe / or els of melancoly blod / yf this fea-  
kenes be caused of excess of melancoly blod / they be soone holpen / by reason  
they be purged of that melancoly blod / at all tymes whā those waynes do  
lyke / lyke as a woman is purged of hyr flowers / but yf they come of colde &  
harte lyng or freyng / they be half vncurable. ¶ Also the same maner byyn  
beyng comenly / is to say / beyng manne in colour / as aforesayd / betwex  
fekenes and feblenes of the shewen / save than be those shylly & poudrysh  
resolucyons more towards purple in colour / than whā they sheweth Emo-  
tadys. ¶ Also yf same maner byi of a womā beyng comenly in colour / haupng  
pouther lyke ashyes in the botum blackyshe / and yf it have shewed so longe  
tyme togyder / it sheweth stoppyng of hyr flowers / and also that melancoly  
blod hath not had his kynde cours nor purgacyon as he shold have / by rea-  
son wherof some parties of that melancoly blod passeth away with yf byyn  
and apereth in the grounde of the byne / lyke pouther that is blackyshe / or  
blooysh / thus sayth the Comentours upon Gilis and Gilbert sayth the same  
And lythermore they say that suche maner of resolucyons / as aforesayd / be  
not stony nor dry / but they be bodyes under small as duste And that they  
have them in the botum of the byne / by reason that the humours that they  
come of be grevys and indigist.

Emozades  
of cold  
of hard  
freynge  
of long  
of melancoly  
blod

ref: 2107  
lib: 3  
cap: 19  
fol: 2107

De Apollastis. Capitulum.

here begyn  
neth a con-  
tent called  
Apollastis.

the pole of 46

properties of  
Apollastis

Apollastis as I sayd in the fyrst boke / the second Chapptre. is but super-  
fluous of the thyngs that be in man /  
and whiche they be I have declared in the fyrst boke / in the second Chapptre.  
¶ And understande that every one of these .iii. digestyons hath his pper pur-  
gacyon and clensyng of superfluous / as is declared in the fyrst boke / as abo-  
ve sayd / for the fyrst digestyon hath his purgacyon with his egestyon / that is  
to say / with his downyng beneath of the arse / The .ii. digestyon hath his purga-  
cyon with the byn at the four members. The thyrd digestyon hath his pur-  
gacyon and clensyng by Apollastis and by sweat. ¶ Also yf you wyl know  
Apollastis in man perfectly / you must knowe these properties of yf Apollastis  
that is to say / a cleyn / shewen / place / tyme / and a quent of shap / now  
as concerninge these maner / yf I understande that the kynde Coloure  
of Apollastis is whete / as I have sayd to be whete / by reason yf those members yf be  
couched of be purged by one of hyr / & though yf the fleshe be redde to yf lyght  
redde / as I have sayd / is not his grete coloure / for yf redde of yf fleshe is caused  
through flowing of yf blod / by the pper of yf fleshe / so yf yf blod were togy-  
der / as I have sayd / for the purgacyon be by the byn / as I have sayd / yf it be so /  
as I have sayd / be by yf fleshe / as I have sayd / to his pper coloure. ¶ Also  
yf I have sayd / be by yf fleshe / as I have sayd / to his pper coloure. ¶ Also  
yf I have sayd / be by yf fleshe / as I have sayd / to his pper coloure.

of the body tyll it be so/that it haue taken sucche colour as kyndely is answer  
 yng to the members and to the lynes/with whiche members and lynes  
 fode shall be incorpored with/for the fode is nothing els but assimilacion/  
 that is to say/a kyndly toyng of that thyng that norysheth in to þe thyng  
 that it norysheth/for as moche as the members and the lynes of the body be  
 whyte kyndly/the fode must be whyte kyndely/Than farthermore/for as  
 moche as euery Apostasis is decayed and decayed from the fode and from the  
 members/that is to say/from all the members of the thyrd digestyō/which  
 be kyndly whyte ergo/then must the Apostasis be whyte. ¶ For Apostasis is  
 nothing els but superfluyte of the thyrd digestyō And euery superfluyte be-  
 lyng to this purpose/ought to be taken lyke and answerynge in kynde/to þe  
 thyng/oz those thynges of whiche he is decayed and decayed/that is to say/  
 that he cometh of And this is the reason why that none Apostasis in byrn is  
 good And kyndly Apostasis/but sucche as is whyte For whyte Apostasis sheweth  
 euery moze perfyte assimilacion of the fode with the members vpon þe  
 mater and kynde of both. And also that kynde here is of myght and power/  
 for to make good digestyō and to mayster the sekenesses in the body: ¶ But  
 one may reason agayne me/and say that all Suctours and comētours in this  
 faculte sheweth and techeth that whyte coloz and blacke coloz be extremy co-  
 lores/anglice the bitterest colours. For as moche as all other colours be but/  
 meny colours betwene them/and compounds of them.ii. and that those.ii.  
 colours be the worst that be/oz may be in byrn/oz in Apostasi/and þe whyte  
 colour in byrn/oz in Apostasi sheweth coldnes and indigestyō/and blacke  
 colour mortificacyō As thou hast in the seconde boke/the fyfth Chapptre. &  
 in þe Chapptre De nigro colore/ in dyuers places. ¶ To this reason I answer  
 and say/that ther be.ii. maner of whytenes in byrn/and also in Apostasi/  
 where of one is waterlyshe and wannyshe/and that colour is not properly  
 whyte colour in Apostasi/ nor yet in byrne. But it is properly called whyte  
 tyll the colour/oz wannyshe colour/whether it be in byrne/oz in Apostasi/ Of  
 whiche maner whyte colour spekeh all the.iii. Chapptres of the second bo-  
 ke/And sume Suctours saye/that wannwhyte colour in byrn/oz els in Apo-  
 stasi together it be/ sheweth begynnyng of digestyō. ¶ Another maner of  
 whytenes ther is in Apostasi/and in byrn that is byght myke whyte/and  
 this maner of whytenes together it be in byrn/oz in Apostasi. Suctours cal-  
 leth it Candoy/anglice/whyte byght/oz claryfying whyte/ And this co-  
 lours in Apostasi comendeth all Suctours/ for sucche colour sheweth en-  
 more that kynde here is of myght and redy and also perfyght as is possible/  
 for to worke in kynde and to make perfyght digestyō. ¶ The second specie  
 of Apostasis is substaunce/that is to say/the body of the Apostasis/shoulde be  
 continuall/and equal/that is to say/it shoulde be holpyng and hepyng hole  
 togeder and ouer all lyke hole/and not to be broken here a clod and there an  
 other. And yf Apostasis be without any Interruptyō/that is to saye/with-  
 out any bychpyng/it sheweth that the.iii. digestyō is good and perfyght/  
 that ther is no bencositye for the tyme/for to byche hym/nor for to lette hym;

Apostasis  
is decayed  
from þe me-  
bers.

whyte Apo-  
stasis.

The secōde  
whytnes;  
of Apostasi-  
tis.

whyte  
Apostasis  
is not possible

The substa-  
nce of Apo-  
stasis.



А clovde i  
bryn.

iii. condição.

ទំព័រ ១១

210113

24042

4

327100  
C-10-10-10

10/10/1942

100



te me bat

1925

Model 21

US. GOVERNMENT  
PRINTING OFFICE

Superficially

208

10



**O**f whete Ispostasis is sufficiently sayd. The best colour in Ispostasis  
after whete colour is red colour. Arnetheles Rubra Ispostasis ever  
more the best longe sicknesses And that is by cause of plenty of matter and  
not by cause of rarity. For sanguis fleumaticus is cause thereof. But though  
it be longe sicknesses as most comonly a fever. Arnetheles it is but fe-  
ver Encretica that is to say / thy for to shape and helpe. For this Encretica / or  
eis Egretudo Encretica / is a fever or a sickness that a man shall shape and  
reouer. Encreticus morbus est bene terminabilis. Encreticus is sayd of this  
woyde En. i. bonum / anglice good / and of this wozyde criss / anglice mending  
or mending of a sickness / or eis a lytelty bound of mending and mending  
thyng thereof. As thou hast in the seconde boke / the Chapytte. De Algedo  
loze. And therefore Ispostasis Rubra methow distalyng of the body / that  
is to say / euyl disposycon in body / but not disposycon towardes bethe / For  
mater that causeth that sickness is Sanguis fleumaticus / whiche sanguis  
fleumaticus is lyght and resonable / Forth in hym self / by reason that he is  
calidus & humidus / for the kynd of blod / is resonable easy for to be despyd /  
resolued / and for to be ouercomen / by cause of his qualytes / that is to saye /  
by cause blode is hote and moist. For thow. it qualites pryncypally causeth  
makyng good digestyon / now yt the mater / that is to say / the humours / that  
caused Ispostasis be rare and compact & harde / for to be resolued & to despye  
the body sholde be watryllhe. If the humours that caused the Ispostasis be  
adur / the body sholde be grosse and thicke / and so shuld there none Ispostasis  
appeere in the body. For Ispostasis custome methow hym in a cleere body /  
eis in a body that is more cleere / and in by cause that the humours are soluble  
and more / as I saye / the body is more in colour / & Ispostasis is red. If  
the humours that caused the sickness is of such / to reason it standeth be those  
it qualites / that be most temperate and most meynyng in bynde / that is to say  
calidus and humidus. For in hote and moist standeth the lyfe of every man  
and best. The temperance of the proportion of the qualites in man / is  
that maketh body both double of blode that be both of fleume and double of  
fleume that be both of Colet / and double of Colet to that be both of Speldstoe  
lye. How peccuriant one wyl say that it is a perye trait that the Ispostasis  
sholde be red / of any other colour but whete only. For Ispostasis  
is enethiole superfluous of the whete colour / and that is to be caused by the  
methering be whete / by reason wherof that the whete colour is bounden to be  
is whete / by reason wherof that the whete colour is bounden to be  
be of suche colour as they be of / whete only. It standeth well by this reason a for  
sayd / that Ispostasis sholde euermore be whete. Gilbertus upon his coment  
upon Galen / whiche followeth the sentence of Galen sayth / that there is some  
Ispostasis that is perye digested / and that Ispostasis is whete and is none  
eis. If Gilbertus putteth it in a new colour to be in Ispostasis by a cause  
to whete colour / that is to say / red and yellow. For Sanguis Ispostasis

Rubra or  
red Ipo-  
stasis.

A fever en-  
cretica.

These. ii.  
qualytes  
caused di-  
gestyon.

odmoo) 13  
moo) 13  
130

omoo  
shuld be  
Ispostasis



## Liber Tertius.

but apart digested/ for first he taketh a red colour/ or els a red colour/ (u. dele towards whyte/ And when that colour is more digested/ it becometh gelid the pelowe/ and at the last whyte. And therefore when one sayth that Ipostas is is superfluous of the iii. digestion/ he sayd soth. But as it seemeth well by Izaak and by Gilbert/ as I sayd right now/ the conclusion of that sayd argument followeth not/ for ther be dyvers manners of digestions/ that is to say/ good and feble/ and more feble/ And accordyng to the digestion of the body is sheweth the Ipostas is hym self in the body.

**Subrubea Ipostas is**

**S**ubrubea Ipostas is hath right lyfell/ or els nothyng of redenes/ but it is most lyke to the watter in colour/ And it is more than Rubra Ipostas is. For it is caused of distemperance and of sickness caused of languyn blode/ watry and rawe/ and ferre from digestion/ therefore it becometh longe and strong sickness/ by reason of rawnes of the mater that caused the sickness/ but neuertheles grete gebertryn in patient/ is ther none/ for as moche as the sickness cometh of mater sanguine that is most of temper of all humours

**Obiectio:**

But a wonder thyng it seemeth that Subrubea Ipostas is sholde be more pernicious than Rubra Ipostas is for as moche as whyte Ipostas is sayd to be the best Ipostas is that may be. And Rubra Ipostas is farther from whyte Ipostas is than is Subrubea Ipostas is/ for Subrubea Ipostas is more colour/ between Rubra Ipostas is and whyte Ipostas is/ for Rubra Ipostas is may not passe nor change oute of red colour in to whyte. But by the same reason/ ergo Subrubea Ipostas is is more nere and more answering in kynde to whyte Ipostas is than is Rubra Ipostas is/ for that/ that is answering and most nere to the best Ipostas is best of the ii. as Aristotle sayth/ Et habet agiles et bone of powers. Ergo for as moche as Subrubea Ipostas is is more nere whyte/ than is red/ Ipostas is sholde be better than Rubra Ipostas is.

**Responsio to the objection.**

To this objection and reason answereth our author and sayth/ that Subrubea Ipostas is is Ipostas is farther from whyte Ipostas is than is Rubra Ipostas is/ for Subrubea Ipostas is cometh not of more digestion/ as both Rubra Ipostas is. Subrubea Ipostas is is caused of watere and rawe blode/ which watere and rawe blode/ by reason of his rawnes maye not be discrete/ nor befynd nor chaunge oute the kynd colour of red. And therefore as by way of digestion/ Rubra Ipostas is is more nere whyte Ipostas is than is Subrubea Ipostas is and Ipostas is is most Ipostas is and most signifieth of all these sayd Ipostas is for it signifieth mortification/ as is spoken in the seconde booke the 17th Chapter.

**Exemplum of blacke Ipostas is**

**I**postas is nigris or Ipostas is niger/ whete is be it is most pernicious for it sheweth mortification in so much that kynde here is consumed and quenched and utterly fordoone/ and that ther is no recovery of patient. But the good here/ that sometime ther is in born Medymen nigris/ and

## Liber Tertius.

Somtyme Eneozmia Aigrum/ the difference betwene Eneozmia & Sedymen  
 I haue declared afore. Sedymen Aigrum is woys than Eneozmia Aigrum/  
 eyth neuertheles Eneozmia Aigrum/ hath moze euyl tokens/ than hat Sedymen  
 Aigrum/ for Eneozmia Aigrum hath .ii. euyl popntes/ for his co-  
 lour is euyl/ and his place is euyl/ but though the colour of Sedymen A-  
 igrum be euyl his place is good/ but y owne defaute y Sedymen Aigrum  
 hath/ is woys than bothe y defautes y Eneozmia Aigrum hath/ for his owne  
 defaute passeth that other. ii. in malice/ this Sedymen Aigrum baldeth him  
 in the bothū of the byrnall/ by cause of plente of malice & erthres/ and of br  
 habyltye of dethe and of dygestion/ for Sedymen Aigrum sheweth that  
 kynde is so moche cōsumpt and fordone that there is not so moche kynde here  
 in the body that may make/ or sufficiently helpe for to make any resolucon  
 and also it sygnifyeth that ther is noo ventosyte in the body/ noz noo ma-  
 ner cause that may helpe for to dysue by/ noz for to put by that same Sedymen  
 bywarde in the byrne/ and therfore it is token of dethe. ¶ But Eneoz-  
 mia Aigrum though it be so that he be roken quenchyng & fordynge of kynde  
 here/ as doth Sedymen Aigrum/ neuertheles by cause that ther is Inpulsion  
 by/ whiche Inpulsio byward is caused of vicosite/ for alway whā Sedymen  
 is a losse in y byrn/ it is tokē of vicosite/ which vicosite is tokē of som myght  
 of kynd/ & of kynd here/ though it be lyteil. ¶ And therfore as Gilbert sayth/  
 Sedymen Aigrum is woys in hym selfe/ than is Eneozmia Aigrum/ or Nephi-  
 lis Aigrum/ for in hym is no helpe of kynd here for to resolute/ noz to subtilize/  
 noz to marster y lehenes/ but in Eneozmia Aigrum or Nephilis Aigrum in  
 some casse ther may be helpe/ for in hym wherkerth some myght of kynd here  
 ¶ And yf blake Ipocastis holdeth hym a lowe in the bothum of the byrne/ it  
 sygnifyeth that the mater is greuous and moche/ and that kynd is febell and  
 Inpotent for to worke/ and that kynde here fayleth by reson wher of ther is  
 no remedy but dethe/ somtyme Ipocastis sheweth blake by cause of melan-  
 colye and that is comonly in dysoluyng the of as in recoueryng of a feuer  
 quartayne/ and also after drypyng of womans flowres. ¶ And somtyme I.  
 postasis is blake by cause of adustyon/ and somtyme by cause of mortificaci-  
 on/ as thou haste in the. ii. boke the chapter of blake colour/ yf Ipocastis be  
 blake/ by cause of adustyon/ than kynde here is utterly consumpt. ¶ If I  
 postasis be blake by cause of mortificacyon than kynde here is quenched and  
 strongled/ and overcome thowow plete & violence of the mater of the lehenes.

Finis

¶ I pray you all that reders be of this present worke to extepte y good mynde  
 and entencion of hym that compyled it for as moche as he entended the same  
 to be for the comen belt of peopell/ & yf opū fynde any thynges in this worke  
 expresse contrary to the oppenyng of auctours/ consyder y it may be thowow y  
 defaute of the wyrtet or of the letter for that hysse is suere that neuer stum-  
 bled/ and here after yf nede be it shal be corrected and also other thynges very  
 expedient shal be ther vnto added as shortly as reson shal requere thowow  
 Godes myght.

A. 4

J. 220. 1796.





Here after followeth a table to fynde  
quchly every Chappiter of this booke  
also many other benefites & shewelles &  
cheynges here in expounded & shewen not  
all thynges expounded in this booke: to be  
noted in this table for what to be done  
by redyngye you shall perceyve.

**Chappitres of the first booke.**

**The first Chappiter treateth what is  
bryn and how it cometh of cleynng of  
blode and humours / wrought by whyte  
kynde in mannes body. folio i.**

**ii. chappiter treateth how bryn is gen  
dyed and wherof it is gedyed in mannes  
body / and also how the herte and dyspich  
that mannes body is nourished by / is di  
gested in what places in the body / and also  
whan it is digested / how it is carryed by  
kynde fro member to member / & from place  
to place / & how it is nourished of every member  
and place within mannes body / and how  
every member is nourished of the same fode be  
cocted / to theyr nourishing And also how  
every digestyon purgeth hym self from  
superfluytes of his digestyon. folio ii.**

**iii. chappiter treateth how a man shold  
bryn hym self in Judgynge and deservynge  
of an bryn / and how / and whan it ought  
to be made and gadered in the brynnall /  
and how oft / and wher it ought to be lo  
ked / And also what thynges be to be co  
sidered in the person that make a bryn /  
for a bryn may be compelled to chage fro  
his natural colours / as by age / ice / dyeth  
hunger / thirst / craves / wearyng / stress  
of coryng / & dyscharyng / and such other  
excesses. Also it is there declared / what  
colored bryn every complexioun shold be  
made. And also the cause of the alteration  
folio iii.**

**iv. chappiter treateth how a man shold  
bryn hym self in Judgynge and deservynge  
of an bryn / and how / and whan it ought  
to be made and gadered in the brynnall /  
and how oft / and wher it ought to be lo  
ked / And also what thynges be to be co  
sidered in the person that make a bryn /  
for a bryn may be compelled to chage fro  
his natural colours / as by age / ice / dyeth  
hunger / thirst / craves / wearyng / stress  
of coryng / & dyscharyng / and such other  
excesses. Also it is there declared / what  
colored bryn every complexioun shold be  
made. And also the cause of the alteration  
folio iii.**

**v. chappiter treateth how a man shold  
bryn hym self in Judgynge and deservynge  
of an bryn / and how / and whan it ought  
to be made and gadered in the brynnall /  
and how oft / and wher it ought to be lo  
ked / And also what thynges be to be co  
sidered in the person that make a bryn /  
for a bryn may be compelled to chage fro  
his natural colours / as by age / ice / dyeth  
hunger / thirst / craves / wearyng / stress  
of coryng / & dyscharyng / and such other  
excesses. Also it is there declared / what  
colored bryn every complexioun shold be  
made. And also the cause of the alteration  
folio iii.**

**vi. chappiter treateth how a man shold  
bryn hym self in Judgynge and deservynge  
of an bryn / and how / and whan it ought  
to be made and gadered in the brynnall /  
and how oft / and wher it ought to be lo  
ked / And also what thynges be to be co  
sidered in the person that make a bryn /  
for a bryn may be compelled to chage fro  
his natural colours / as by age / ice / dyeth  
hunger / thirst / craves / wearyng / stress  
of coryng / & dyscharyng / and such other  
excesses. Also it is there declared / what  
colored bryn every complexioun shold be  
made. And also the cause of the alteration  
folio iii.**

**vii. chappiter treateth how a man shold  
bryn hym self in Judgynge and deservynge  
of an bryn / and how / and whan it ought  
to be made and gadered in the brynnall /  
and how oft / and wher it ought to be lo  
ked / And also what thynges be to be co  
sidered in the person that make a bryn /  
for a bryn may be compelled to chage fro  
his natural colours / as by age / ice / dyeth  
hunger / thirst / craves / wearyng / stress  
of coryng / & dyscharyng / and such other  
excesses. Also it is there declared / what  
colored bryn every complexioun shold be  
made. And also the cause of the alteration  
folio iii.**

**viii. chappiter treateth how a man shold  
bryn hym self in Judgynge and deservynge  
of an bryn / and how / and whan it ought  
to be made and gadered in the brynnall /  
and how oft / and wher it ought to be lo  
ked / And also what thynges be to be co  
sidered in the person that make a bryn /  
for a bryn may be compelled to chage fro  
his natural colours / as by age / ice / dyeth  
hunger / thirst / craves / wearyng / stress  
of coryng / & dyscharyng / and such other  
excesses. Also it is there declared / what  
colored bryn every complexioun shold be  
made. And also the cause of the alteration  
folio iii.**

**ix. chappiter treateth how a man shold  
bryn hym self in Judgynge and deservynge  
of an bryn / and how / and whan it ought  
to be made and gadered in the brynnall /  
and how oft / and wher it ought to be lo  
ked / And also what thynges be to be co  
sidered in the person that make a bryn /  
for a bryn may be compelled to chage fro  
his natural colours / as by age / ice / dyeth  
hunger / thirst / craves / wearyng / stress  
of coryng / & dyscharyng / and such other  
excesses. Also it is there declared / what  
colored bryn every complexioun shold be  
made. And also the cause of the alteration  
folio iii.**

**x. chappiter treateth how a man shold  
bryn hym self in Judgynge and deservynge  
of an bryn / and how / and whan it ought  
to be made and gadered in the brynnall /  
and how oft / and wher it ought to be lo  
ked / And also what thynges be to be co  
sidered in the person that make a bryn /  
for a bryn may be compelled to chage fro  
his natural colours / as by age / ice / dyeth  
hunger / thirst / craves / wearyng / stress  
of coryng / & dyscharyng / and such other  
excesses. Also it is there declared / what  
colored bryn every complexioun shold be  
made. And also the cause of the alteration  
folio iii.**

**xi. chappiter treateth how a man shold  
bryn hym self in Judgynge and deservynge  
of an bryn / and how / and whan it ought  
to be made and gadered in the brynnall /  
and how oft / and wher it ought to be lo  
ked / And also what thynges be to be co  
sidered in the person that make a bryn /  
for a bryn may be compelled to chage fro  
his natural colours / as by age / ice / dyeth  
hunger / thirst / craves / wearyng / stress  
of coryng / & dyscharyng / and such other  
excesses. Also it is there declared / what  
colored bryn every complexioun shold be  
made. And also the cause of the alteration  
folio iii.**

**xii. chappiter treateth how a man shold  
bryn hym self in Judgynge and deservynge  
of an bryn / and how / and whan it ought  
to be made and gadered in the brynnall /  
and how oft / and wher it ought to be lo  
ked / And also what thynges be to be co  
sidered in the person that make a bryn /  
for a bryn may be compelled to chage fro  
his natural colours / as by age / ice / dyeth  
hunger / thirst / craves / wearyng / stress  
of coryng / & dyscharyng / and such other  
excesses. Also it is there declared / what  
colored bryn every complexioun shold be  
made. And also the cause of the alteration  
folio iii.**

**xiii. chappiter treateth how a man shold  
bryn hym self in Judgynge and deservynge  
of an bryn / and how / and whan it ought  
to be made and gadered in the brynnall /  
and how oft / and wher it ought to be lo  
ked / And also what thynges be to be co  
sidered in the person that make a bryn /  
for a bryn may be compelled to chage fro  
his natural colours / as by age / ice / dyeth  
hunger / thirst / craves / wearyng / stress  
of coryng / & dyscharyng / and such other  
excesses. Also it is there declared / what  
colored bryn every complexioun shold be  
made. And also the cause of the alteration  
folio iii.**

**The first Chappiter of the second  
treateth of the .x. colours of bryn in  
hertall / and what they signifye.**

**folio i.**

**ii. chappiter treateth of blacke colour  
in bryn and what they signifye. folio ii.**

**iii. chappiter treateth of bloo colour  
in bryn / what they signifye / And also  
it treateth of all the synowes and veynes  
in mannes body / and what their nature  
properthys be / and what use in mannes  
body they be put and set to. folio iii.**

**iiii. chappiter treateth of lymbe colour  
in bryn / & of the significacions. folio iv.**

**v. chappiter treateth of yelow colour  
in bryn / & what they signifye. folio v.**

**vi. chappiter treateth of myke whyte  
colour / and what it signifye. folio vi.**

**vii. chappiter treateth of colour katopos  
and what they signifye. folio vii.**

**viii. chappiter treateth of pale and sub  
pale colours / what they signifye. folio viii.**

**ix. chappiter treateth of Citryn colour. folio ix.**

**x. chappiter treateth of Ruse & subul  
colours in bryn / & what they signifye. folio x.**

**xi. chappiter treateth of Rubens and  
subrubens colour in bryn and what they  
signifie. folio xi.**

**xii. chappiter treateth of Vindicunda  
and subvindicunda colours in bryn and  
what they signifye. folio xii.**

**xiii. chappiter treateth of colours Inopos &  
hpanos / & what they signifye. folio xiii.**

**xiiii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xiiii.**

**xv. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xv.**

**xvi. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xvi.**

**xvii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xvii.**

**xviii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xviii.**

**xix. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xix.**

**xx. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xx.**

**xxi. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxi.**

**xxii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxii.**

**xxiii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxiii.**

**xxiiii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxiiii.**

**xxv. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxv.**

**xxvi. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxvi.**

**xxvii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxvii.**

**xxviii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxviii.**

**xxix. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxix.**

**xxx. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxx.**

**xxxi. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxxi.**

**xxxii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxxii.**

**xxxiii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxxiii.**

**xxxiiii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxxiiii.**

**xxxv. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxxv.**

**xxxvi. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxxvi.**

**xxxvii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxxvii.**

**xxxviii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxxviii.**

**xxxix. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xxxix.**

**xl. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xl.**

**xli. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xli.**

**xlii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xlii.**

**xliiii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xliiii.**

**xliiiii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xliiiii.**

**xlv. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xlv.**

**xlvi. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xlvi.**

**xlvii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xlvii.**

**xlviii. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xlviii.**

**xlvix. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio xlvix.**

**l. chappiter treateth of blacke and y  
colours and what they signifye. folio l.**



**[Chapptres of the .iii. boke]**

of fyft chapptre of this booke boke  
treateth of the contents that is to saye/  
of the things apertynge in byrn &  
what they signifye. And also it treateth  
howe byrn bateth / soyme in colour &  
soyme in substance and that through  
humours and many causes / which many  
times deceyve the physician / for as au-  
stons say / the most sure knowledge of  
byrn that may be is by the contents which  
aperteth in the byrn / for they be bodies of  
thyngis whiche cometh from the partes  
or members of the body and shewe moze  
surely the disposicion of the body than  
doth colour of the byrne. lvi.

ii. chapptre treateth of the colours of  
the cyrle of the byrn & of there significa-  
cions. lvi.

iii. ca. treateth of ambullus which be  
moche lyke buttills or bollips on the wa-  
ter / or small bladders on a manes skyn  
and what they signifye. lvi.

iiii. chappt. is called grana moche lyke  
small graynes / or small partes of frothe  
or suche lyke. lvi.

v. ca. is of nubes .i. a sky in byrn whi-  
che is a fumous & a vaporous superfluyte  
swartelyke and hymphlyke bouyng about  
in the byrn. lvi.

vi. ca. spuma .i. lyke a frothe in byrne  
and what they signifye. li.

vii. ca. treateth of pignidine .i. fatnes  
in byrn / lyke fat / or greys which is re-  
solued of members in the body. li.

viii. ca. is of humours in byrn & what  
they signifye. li.

ix. ca. is de sanguine byrne blod in byrn  
and what it signifyeth. li.

x. ca. treateth of gravell in byrn. lvi.

xi. ca. de bile byrne .i. lyke beed beeps in  
byrn resolved in the body. lvi.

xii. ca. de furfura / which be moche like  
bynde in byrn & what they signifye. lvi.

xiii. ca. is crinoides and what they sig-  
nifye. lvi.

xiiii. ca. is squame whiche be lyke sha-  
les of a fyllhe & what they signifye. lvi.

xv. ca. is de sthomis whiche be lyke  
lytell mottes in the sone and what they  
signifye. lvi.

xvi. ca. de spermate lyke nature of ma-  
or beest and what they signifye. li.

xvii. ca. de cineribus whiche be lyke as-  
hes & what they signifye. li.

xviii. ca. of whete Apostasis and what  
it signifyeth. li.

xix. ca. is of red Apostasis and what  
it signifyeth. li.

xx. ca. is of subyted Apostasis & what  
it signifyeth. li.

xxi. ca. of blacke and grene Apostasis  
and what it signifyeth. li.

xxii. ca. of bladders. li. lvi.

xxiii. ca. of blood. li. lvi.

xxiv. ca. of the beed. li. lvi.

xxv. ca. of fatnes. li. lvi.

xxvi. ca. of humours. li. lvi.

xxvii. ca. of sanguine. li. lvi.

Turbuls of smal bladders in vryn. xlviii

C.

Coler. lli. vii. xxxii. xxxiii. xxxvi. xli:

Complexio. vii.

Cista fellis the gall. ii.

Contentis in vryn. vi. lliii.

Coffe. xix.

Condicions of consideracions to be had  
in Judgyn of vryn. viii.

Colica passio. xxi. xxvii.

Colone. i. a gute. xxi.

Clowde in vryn. xxxiii. xli.

D.

Digestyons. i. lli. xlii. lxii.

Decoction of the fode. ii.

Dynes. vii. xxvi.

Dyeth. viii.

Dynke. ix.

Droppye. xliii. xxi. xxxvii.

Dymnes. xxxvii. xli.

E.

Erynge. ix.

Equalite. xli. lxii.

Enozymia. xxxii. lxi. lxii.

Epigoyontaymend is a dyspe of a ryme  
that all the gute lyeth on. yf it byeth the  
gutes falleth in to y coldnes. xxi.

Extremities of the body. xxxviii.

Eupill tokens in a seke man. xlii. xxi.

Emozades. xliii. ix.

Egestion. i. dyspynge. xxxviii. xli. xxxiii.  
xx. v.

F.

Fever quartayne. xli. xlii.

Fever Emulsi. xvii. lli. xli.

Fever cotidian. xlii.

Fever tertian. xlii. xxxix.

Fever hipparia. xlii.

Fever Etike. xix. xxxiii. xxxvii. xlii. llii.  
lvii.

Fever Eryng. xlii.

Fever intercolas. xlii.

Fever planatyke. xlii.

Fever sinorhus. xi. xli.

A rotten fever. xli.

A colde fever. xlii.

Fever augmantis. xli.

Fever conlonides. xli.

Fever Epimastica. ix.

Furcuretica. llii.

Fever continuall. xlii. xli.

Fallynge schenes. ix.

Fever fe. xli. xlii. xli.

Froth in vryn. xxxiii. l.

Fathnes in vryn. lli. llii.

Flure of the wombe. xlii. xlii. xli. xlii.

Flur. xlii. xlii. xli. xli. xli. xli. xli. xli.

Fleume. vii. xlii. xli. xli. xli. xli.

Furbi.

Fewme of smoke. xlii. xlii.

Froth in vryn. xxxiii.

G.

Grapnes in vryn. xxxvi. xxxvii. xli.

Gall. ii. xli.

Guttes in the body. xli.

Gowte. lviii. lix.

Good tokens in a seke man. xlii. xlii.

H.

Humours. lli. llii. vii. xli. xlii. xlii. xlii.

xxxviii. xli. l. lli. llii. lv. lvii. lvii.

Hede. xvii. xvii. xli. xlii. xli. l. lli.

lvii. lvii.

Heter. ii. xli.

I.

Ipostasis. i. iii. vi. xli. xlii. xlii. lli. llii.

lv. ix. xli. xlii.

Ilica passio. xlii. xlii.

Judgyn of an vryn. lli. xlii. xlii.

Infection. i. hyennynge of blade. xlii.

lvii. xlii. xlii. xlii. xlii. xlii. xlii. xlii.

Imaginatye. xli.

Inequalite in vryn. xli.

Jaundes. xlii. xli. li.

Intestina be guters woin the body. xlii.

L.

L puer. ii. lli. xi. xli. xli. xli. xli.

li. lli.

Lunges. xli. xlii. xli. xli.





